Creative Commons Licensing

This work is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-ShareAlike 3.0 Unported License.

You are free:
- to Share — to copy, distribute and transmit the work
- to Remix — to adapt the work

Under the following conditions:
- Attribution — You must attribute the work in the following manner:
  This work is based on an original work of the Core Knowledge® Foundation made available through licensing under a Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-ShareAlike 3.0 Unported License. This does not in any way imply that the Core Knowledge Foundation endorses this work.
- Noncommercial — You may not use this work for commercial purposes.
- Share Alike — If you alter, transform, or build upon this work, you may distribute the resulting work only under the same or similar license to this one.

With the understanding that:
For any reuse or distribution, you must make clear to others the license terms of this work. The best way to do this is with a link to this web page:
http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-sa/3.0/

Copyright © 2013 Core Knowledge Foundation

www.coreknowledge.org

All Rights Reserved.

Core Knowledge Language Arts, Listening & Learning, and Tell It Again! are trademarks of the Core Knowledge Foundation.

Trademarks and trade names are shown in this book strictly for illustrative and educational purposes and are the property of their respective owners. References herein should not be regarded as affecting the validity of said trademarks and trade names.
# Table of Contents

## Early World Civilizations

**Tell It Again!™ Read-Aloud Anthology**

Alignment Chart for *Early World Civilizations* ......................................................... v

Introduction to *Early World Civilizations* ................................................................. 1

Lesson 1: A Father and His Son in Mesopotamia ......................................................... 12

Lesson 2: Writing in Mesopotamia ................................................................................ 23

Lesson 3: The Religion of Babylon ................................................................................. 34

Lesson 4: The Hanging Gardens of Babylon ............................................................... 45

Pausing Point 1 ............................................................................................................... 58

Lesson 5: People of the Nile ......................................................................................... 63

Lesson 6: Writing in Ancient Egypt .............................................................................. 74

Lesson 7: Amon-Ra and the Gods of Ancient Egypt. .................................................. 85

Lesson 8: Approaching the Great Pyramid ................................................................. 95

Lesson 9: The Sphinx .................................................................................................... 105

Lesson 10: The Story of Hatshepsut .......................................................................... 116

Lesson 11: Tutankhamun, The Golden Pharaoh, Part I .............................................. 127

Lesson 12: Tutankhamun, The Golden Pharaoh, Part II .......................................... 137

Pausing Point 2 ............................................................................................................. 146

Lesson 13: Three World Religions ............................................................................. 151

Lesson 14: Judaism ....................................................................................................... 163

Lesson 15: Christianity ................................................................................................. 174

Lesson 16: Islam ........................................................................................................... 184

Domain Review ............................................................................................................ 194

Domain Assessment .................................................................................................... 198

Culminating Activities ................................................................................................. 202

Appendix ....................................................................................................................... 205
# Alignment Chart for Early World Civilizations

The following chart contains core content objectives addressed in this domain. It also demonstrates alignment between the Common Core State Standards and corresponding Core Knowledge Language Arts (CKLA) goals.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Core Content Objectives</th>
<th>Lesson</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Locate the area known as Mesopotamia on a world map or globe and identify it as part of Asia</td>
<td>1 2 3 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Explain the importance of the Tigris and Euphrates rivers and the use of canals to support farming and the development of the city of Babylon</td>
<td>5 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Describe the city of Babylon and the Hanging Gardens</td>
<td>7 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identify cuneiform as the system of writing used in Mesopotamia</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Explain why a written language is important to the development of a civilization</td>
<td>10 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Explain the significance of the Code of Hammurabi</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Explain why rules and laws are important to the development of a civilization</td>
<td>13 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Explain the ways in which a leader is important to the development of a civilization</td>
<td>15 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Explain the significance of gods/goddesses, ziggurats, temples, and priests in Mesopotamia</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Describe key components of a civilization</td>
<td>18 19 20 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identify Mesopotamia as the “Cradle of Civilization”</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Describe how a civilization evolves and changes over time</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Locate Egypt on a world map or globe and identify it as a part of Africa</td>
<td>24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 2013 Core Knowledge Foundation
### Alignment Chart for Early World Civilizations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lesson</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>16</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Explain the importance of the Nile River and how its floods were important for farming</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identify hieroglyphics as the system of writing used in ancient Egypt</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Explain the significance of gods/goddesses in ancient Egypt</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identify pyramids and explain their significance in ancient Egypt</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Describe how the pyramids were built</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Explain that much of Egypt is the Sahara Desert</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identify the Sphinx and explain its significance in ancient Egypt</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identify Hatshepsut as a pharaoh of ancient Egypt and explain her significance as pharaoh</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identify Tutankhamun as a pharaoh of ancient Egypt and explain his significance</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Explain that much of what we know about ancient Egypt is because of the work of archaeologists</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identify Judaism, Christianity, and Islam as major monotheistic world religions</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Locate Jerusalem, Israel, and the area known as the Middle East on a map</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define monotheism as the belief in one God</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identify the Western Wall (or the Wailing Wall) as associated with Judaism, the Church of the Holy Sepulchre with Christianity, and the Dome of the Rock with Islam</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identify the Hebrews as the ancient people who were descendants of Abraham</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Explain that followers of Judaism are called Jewish people and that the term Jewish is used to describe practices or objects associated with Judaism</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identify the Star of David as a six-pointed star and a symbol of Judaism</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identify the Torah as an important part of the Hebrew scriptures</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Topic</td>
<td>Lesson</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identify that a Jewish house of worship is called a synagogue or temple</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identify Moses as a teacher who long ago led the Jewish people out of Egypt in an event referred to as the Exodus</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Explain that, according to an important story in the Torah, Moses received the Ten Commandments from God and that the Ten Commandments are rules that tell people how to behave or live their lives</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identify important Jewish holidays such as Passover, Rosh Hashanah, Yom Kippur, and Hanukkah</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Explain that Christianity developed after Judaism</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Explain that followers of Christianity are called Christians</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recognize the cross as a symbol of Christianity</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identify the Bible as the Christian holy book</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identify that a Christian house of worship is called a church</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identify that Christians believe Jesus to be the Messiah and the son of God</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identify important Christian holidays, such as Easter and Christmas</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recognize that both Christians and Jewish people follow the Ten Commandments</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Explain that Islam originated in Arabia</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Explain that followers of Islam are called Muslims</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identify the crescent and star as symbols of Islam</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identify the Qur’an as the holy book of Islam, containing laws for daily living and many stories that appear in Jewish and Christian holy books</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identify that a Muslim place of worship is called a mosque</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Alignment Chart for Early World Civilizations

#### Lesson

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>16</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Identify that Muslims believe that Moses and Jesus were prophets but believe that Muhammad was the last and greatest of the prophets</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identify important Muslim holidays, such as Ramadan and Eid-ul-fitr</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Reading Standards for Literature: Grade 1

#### Key Ideas and Details

| STD RL.1.3 | Use narrative language to describe (orally or in writing) characters, setting, things, events, actions, a scene, or facts from a fiction read-aloud | ✓ |

### Craft and Structure

| STD RL.1.6 | Identify who is telling the story at various points in a text. | ✓ |

### Reading Standards for Informational Text: Grade 1

#### Key Ideas and Details

| STD RI.1.1 | Ask and answer questions about key details in a text. | ✓ |

| CKLA Goal(s) | Identify who is telling the story at various points in a fiction read-aloud | ✓ |

| CKLA Goal(s) | Answer questions that require making interpretations, judgments, or giving opinions about what is heard in a nonfiction/informational read-aloud, including answering why questions that require recognizing cause/effect relationships | ✓ |
### Alignment Chart for Early World Civilizations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lesson</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### STD RI.1.2
Identify the main topic and retell key details of a text.

**CKLA Goal(s)**
Identify the main topic and retell key details of a nonfiction/informational read-aloud

#### STD RI.1.3
Describe the connection between two individuals, events, ideas, or pieces of information in a text.

**CKLA Goal(s)**
Describe the connection between two individuals, events, ideas, or pieces of information in a nonfiction/informational read-aloud

#### Craft and Structure

#### STD RI.1.4
Ask and answer questions to help determine or clarify the meaning of words and phrases in a text.

**CKLA Goal(s)**
Ask and answer questions about unknown words and phrases in nonfiction/informational read-alouds and discussions

#### Integration of Knowledge and Ideas

#### STD RI.1.7
Use the illustrations and details in a text to describe its key ideas.

**CKLA Goal(s)**
Use illustrations and details in a nonfiction/informational read-aloud to describe its key ideas

#### STD RI.1.9
Identify basic similarities in and differences between two texts on the same topic (e.g., in illustrations, descriptions, or procedures).

**CKLA Goal(s)**
Compare and contrast (orally or in writing) similarities and differences within a single nonfiction/informational read-aloud or between two or more nonfiction/informational read-alouds

#### Range of Reading and Level of Text Complexity

#### STD RI.1.10
With prompting and support, read informational texts appropriately complex for Grade 1.

**CKLA Goal(s)**
Listen to and demonstrate understanding of nonfiction/informational read-alouds of appropriate complexity for Grades 1–3
### Writing Standards: Grade 1

#### Production and Distribution of Writing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STD W.1.5</th>
<th>With guidance and support from adults, focus on a topic, respond to questions and suggestions from peers, and add details to strengthen writing as needed.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CKLA Goal(s)</td>
<td>With guidance and support from adults, focus on a topic, respond to questions and suggestions from peers, and add details to strengthen writing as needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Research to Build and Present Knowledge

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STD W.1.8</th>
<th>With guidance and support from adults, recall information from experiences or gather information from provided sources to answer a question.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CKLA Goal(s)</td>
<td>Make personal connections (orally or in writing) to events or experiences in a fiction or nonfiction/informational read-aloud, and/or make connections among several read-alouds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Comprehension and Collaboration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STD SL.1.1</th>
<th>Participate in collaborative conversations with diverse partners about Grade 1 topics and texts with peers and adults in small and large groups.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>STD SL.1.1a</td>
<td>Follow agreed-upon rules for discussions (e.g., listening to others with care, speaking one at a time about the topics and texts under discussion).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CKLA Goal(s)</td>
<td>Use agreed-upon rules for group discussion, e.g., look at and listen to the speaker, raise hand to speak, take turns, say “excuse me” or “please,” etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 2013 Core Knowledge Foundation
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alignment Chart for Early World Civilizations</th>
<th>Lesson</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  15  16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>STD SL.1.1b</strong></td>
<td>Build on others’ talk in conversations by responding to the comments of others through multiple exchanges.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CKLA Goal(s)</strong></td>
<td>Carry on and participate in a conversation over at least six turns, staying on topic, initiating comments or responding to a partner’s comments, with either an adult or another child of the same age</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>STD SL.1.1c</strong></td>
<td>Ask questions to clear up any confusion about the topics and texts under discussion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CKLA Goal(s)</strong></td>
<td>Ask questions to clarify information about the topic in a fiction or nonfiction/informational read-aloud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>STD SL.1.2</strong></td>
<td>Ask and answer questions about key details in a text read aloud or information presented orally or through other media.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CKLA Goal(s)</strong></td>
<td>Ask and answer questions (e.g., who, what, where, when), orally or in writing, requiring literal recall and understanding of the details, and/or facts of a fiction or nonfiction/informational read-aloud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>✔ ✔ ✔ ✔ ✔ ✔ ✔ ✔ ✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>STD SL.1.3</strong></td>
<td>Ask and answer questions about what a speaker says in order to gather additional information or clarify something that is not understood.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CKLA Goal(s)</strong></td>
<td>Ask questions to clarify directions, exercises, classroom routines, and/or what a speaker says about a topic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Presentation of Knowledge and Ideas**

| **STD SL.1.4** | Describe people, places, things, and events with relevant details, expressing ideas and feelings clearly. |
| **CKLA Goal(s)** | Describe people, places, things, and events with relevant details, expressing ideas and feelings clearly |
| | ✔ |

<p>| <strong>STD SL.1.5</strong> | Add drawings or other visual displays to descriptions when appropriate to clarify ideas, thoughts, and feelings. |
| <strong>CKLA Goal(s)</strong> | Add drawings or other visual displays to oral or written descriptions when appropriate to clarify ideas, thoughts, and feelings |
| | ✔ ✔ ✔ ✔ ✔ ✔ |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alignment Chart for Early World Civilizations</th>
<th>Lesson</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STD SL.1.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Produce complete sentences when appropriate to task and situation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CKLA Goal(s)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Produce complete sentences when appropriate to task and situation</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Language Standards: Grade 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocabulary Acquisition and Use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STD L.1.5c</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identify real-life connections between words and their use (e.g., note places at home that are cozy)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CKLA Goal(s)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identify real-life connections between words and their use (e.g., note places at home that are cozy)</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STD L.1.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use words and phrases acquired through conversations, reading and being read to, and responding to texts, including using frequently occurring conjunctions to signal simple relationships (e.g., because)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CKLA Goal(s)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use words and phrases acquired through conversations, reading and being read to, and responding to texts, including using frequently occurring conjunctions to signal simple relationships (e.g., because)</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional CKLA Goals</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identify new meanings for familiar words and apply them accurately</td>
<td>✓ ✓ ✓ ✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prior to listening to an informational read-aloud, identify what they know about a given topic</td>
<td>✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Share writing with others</td>
<td>✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With assistance, create and interpret timelines and lifelines related to an informational read-aloud</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demonstrate understanding of literary language such as setting</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alignment Chart for Early World Civilizations</td>
<td>Lesson</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>While listening to an informational read-aloud, orally predict what will happen next in the read-aloud based on the text heard thus far, and then compare the actual outcome to the prediction</td>
<td>✔ ✔ ✔ ✔ ✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use personal pronouns orally</td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These goals are addressed in all lessons in this domain. Rather than repeat these goals as lesson objectives throughout the domain, they are designated here as frequently occurring goals.
This introduction includes the necessary background information to be used in teaching the Early World Civilizations domain. The Tell It Again! Read-Aloud Anthology for Early World Civilizations contains sixteen daily lessons, each of which is composed of two distinct parts, so that the lesson may be divided into smaller chunks of time and presented at different intervals during the day. Each entire lesson will require a total of sixty minutes.

This domain includes two Pausing Points, one after Lesson 4 when students have covered all of the lessons on Mesopotamia, and another after Lesson 12 at the end of the ancient Egypt section. At the end of the domain, a Domain Review, a Domain Assessment, and Culminating Activities are included to allow time to review, reinforce, assess, and remediate content knowledge. You should spend no more than twenty-one days total on this domain.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Week One</th>
<th>Day 1</th>
<th>Day 2</th>
<th>Day 3</th>
<th>Day 4</th>
<th>Day 5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lesson 1A:</td>
<td>Lesson 2A:</td>
<td>Lesson 3A:</td>
<td>Lesson 4A:</td>
<td>Pausing Point 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“A Father and His Son in Mesopotamia” (40 min.)</td>
<td>“Writing in Mesopotamia” (40 min.)</td>
<td>“The Religion of Babylon” (40 min.)</td>
<td>“The Hanging Gardens of Babylon” (40 min.)</td>
<td>(60 min.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson 1B:</td>
<td>Lesson 2B:</td>
<td>Lesson 3B:</td>
<td>Lesson 4B:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extensions (20 min.)</td>
<td>Extensions (20 min.)</td>
<td>Extensions (20 min.)</td>
<td>Extensions (20 min.)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60 min.</td>
<td>60 min.</td>
<td>60 min.</td>
<td>60 min.</td>
<td>60 min.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Week Two</th>
<th>Day 6</th>
<th>Day 7</th>
<th>Day 8</th>
<th>Day 9</th>
<th>Day 10</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lesson 5A:</td>
<td>Lesson 6A:</td>
<td>Lesson 7A:</td>
<td>Lesson 8A:</td>
<td>Lesson 9A:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“People of the Nile” (40 min.)</td>
<td>“Writing in Ancient Egypt” (40 min.)</td>
<td>“Amon-Ra and the Gods of Ancient Egypt” (40 min.)</td>
<td>“Approaching the Great Pyramid” (40 min.)</td>
<td>“The Sphinx” (40 min.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson 5B:</td>
<td>Lesson 6B:</td>
<td>Lesson 7B:</td>
<td>Lesson 8B:</td>
<td>Lesson 9B:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extensions (20 min.)</td>
<td>Extensions (20 min.)</td>
<td>Extensions (20 min.)</td>
<td>Extensions (20 min.)</td>
<td>Extensions (20 min.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60 min.</td>
<td>60 min.</td>
<td>60 min.</td>
<td>60 min.</td>
<td>60 min.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Week Three

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Day 11</th>
<th>Day 12</th>
<th>Day 13</th>
<th>Day 14</th>
<th>Day 15</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lesson 10B: Extensions (20 min.)</td>
<td>Lesson 11B: Extensions (20 min.)</td>
<td>Lesson 12B: Extensions (20 min.)</td>
<td>60 min.</td>
<td>60 min.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Week Four

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Day 16</th>
<th>Day 17</th>
<th>Day 18</th>
<th>Day 19</th>
<th>Day 20</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lesson 14A: “Judaism” (40 min.)</td>
<td>Lesson 15A: “Christianity” (40 min.)</td>
<td>Lesson 16A: “Islam” (40 min.)</td>
<td>Domain Review (60 min.)</td>
<td>Domain Assessment (60 min.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson 14B: Extensions (20 min.)</td>
<td>Lesson 15B: Extensions (20 min.)</td>
<td>Lesson 16B: Extensions (20 min.)</td>
<td>60 min.</td>
<td>60 min.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Week Five

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Day 21</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Culminating Activities (60 min.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60 min.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© Lessons include Student Performance Task Assessments

# Lessons require advance preparation and/or additional materials; please plan ahead

### Domain Components

Along with this Anthology, you will need:

- **Tell It Again! Media Disk** or the **Tell It Again! Flip Book for Early World Civilizations**
- **Tell It Again! Image Cards for Early World Civilizations**
- **Tell It Again! Supplemental Guide for Early World Civilizations**
- **Tell It Again! Multiple Meaning Word Posters for Early World Civilizations**

**Recommended Resource:**

- **Core Knowledge Teacher Handbook (Grade 1)**, edited by E.D. Hirsch, Jr. and Souzanne A. Wright (Core Knowledge Foundation, 2004) ISBN: 978-1890517700
Why Early World Civilizations Are Important

This domain will introduce students to the development of early civilizations by examining the fundamental features of civilizations, including the advent of farming, establishment of cities and government, and creation of other practices, such as writing and religion. It should be noted that the word *civilization*, as used in this domain, is not meant to convey a value judgment but to indicate that a group of people collectively established and shared these practices. Starting in the ancient Middle East, students will study Mesopotamia. They will learn about the importance of the Tigris and Euphrates rivers, the development of cuneiform as the earliest-known form of writing, the first codification of laws known as the Code of Hammurabi, and the significance of gods and goddesses in the “cradle of civilization.”

Students will then explore ancient Egypt and be able to compare and contrast Mesopotamia and Egypt. They will learn about the importance of the Nile River; the use of hieroglyphs; the rise of pharaohs, including Tutankhamun and Hatshepsut; the building of the Sphinx and pyramids; and the significance of mummification and the afterlife for ancient Egyptians.

In the first two parts of the domain, the concept of religion (polytheism) in Mesopotamia and ancient Egypt is introduced as one of the major forces shaping those civilizations. The end of the domain provides a historical introduction to the development of three world religions—Judaism, Christianity, and Islam—which are all characterized by a belief in a single God. The first read-aloud on religion acts as an introduction for the next three and connects this information to what students have already learned about the early civilizations of Mesopotamia and Egypt. This part of the domain will help provide students with a basic vocabulary for understanding many events and ideas in history throughout later grades.

**Note:** It is recommended that first-grade teachers discuss with their school administrator whether or not to cover the final section of the domain dealing with Judaism, Christianity, and Islam, using the following explanation to guide that discussion:

The study of these world religions is important because religion has been such a central force in shaping the development of
civilizations, and it is difficult to teach world history without referencing the role played by religion. For example, the Middle Ages cannot be taught without reference to the importance of the Christian church. The Crusades cannot be taught without reference to the development of Islam. Thus, the Core Knowledge Language Arts program introduces students at various grade levels to major world religions as part of their study of world history, which will provide students with a basic vocabulary for understanding many events and ideas in history. The goal of the program is to familiarize students with major ideas and facts in world history—it is not to proselytize—and it is imperative to look at the curriculum as a whole. The curriculum in first grade focuses on teaching students very basic similarities and differences among religions and fostering an understanding of and respect for those similarities and differences. Those concepts lay the foundation for the study of other religions, such as polytheistic religions as part of the Early American Civilizations domain in Grade 1; Hinduism and Buddhism as part of the Early Asian Civilizations domain in Grade 2; etc.

It is recommended that, when teaching these topics, the tone be one of respect and balance. Should questions about truth and rightness come up in discussion, an appropriate answer is, “People of different faiths believe different things to be true. These are questions you may want to talk about with your family and the adults at home.”

Teachers are also advised to inform parents and caregivers of this rationale prior to covering these topics so that families understand that teachers are teaching historical and cultural facts and are not preaching. A family letter (Instructional Master 12B-1) is included in the Appendix that can be used to communicate this to students’ families.

What Students Have Already Learned in Core Knowledge Language Arts in Kindergarten

Students who participated in the Kindergarten Listening & Learning Strand of the Core Knowledge Language Arts program have already started building general oral and written language skills, as well as the background knowledge and vocabulary that are critical to listening and reading comprehension in later years. In kindergarten, they listened to read-alouds of various genres—
with increasing length and complexity—and learned to answer questions orally about what they heard. Students were introduced to certain literary terms—including author, illustrator, character, setting, and plot—that enabled them to talk about the elements of literature to which they were exposed.

In addition, students learned specific content knowledge from the nonfiction read-alouds. With the exception of general information about farming, the content of *Early World Civilizations* will be new to students.

**Core Vocabulary for Early World Civilizations**

The following list contains all of the core vocabulary words in *Early World Civilizations* in the forms in which they appear in the domain. These words appear in the read-alouds or, in some instances, in the “Introducing the Read-Aloud” section at the beginning of the lesson. Boldfaced words in the list have an associated Word Work activity. The inclusion of the words on this list does not mean that students are immediately expected to be able to use all of these words on their own. However, through repeated exposure throughout all lessons, they should acquire a good understanding of most of these words and begin to use some of them in conversation.
Lesson 1
banks
canals
flow
reservoir
trade

Lesson 2
cuneiform
records
scribes
symbols
tablets

Lesson 3
gods/goddesses
priests
religion
temples
ziggurat

Lesson 4
caravan
chariots
merchant
platforms

Lesson 5
advantage
Egyptians
enriched
flooding

Lesson 6
accurately
hieroglyphs

Lesson 7
blossom
depicted
lotus

Lesson 8
afterlife
architect
journey
pyramid
treasure

Lesson 9
base
Sphinx
tugged
visible

Lesson 10
accomplishments
counselors
declare
pharaohs
tradition

Lesson 11
archaeologist
authority
passage
tombs
valuable

Lesson 12
priceless
sarcophagus
triumph

Lesson 13
Christianity
faithful
shrine
Islam
Judaism

Lesson 14
Hebrew
Jewish
prophet
rabbi
synagogue

Lesson 15
Christian
church
eternal
Messiah
miracle

Lesson 16
fasting
mosque
Muslim
prayer
similarities
**Student Performance Task Assessments**

In the *Tell It Again! Read-Aloud Anthology for Early World Civilizations*, there are numerous opportunities to assess students’ learning. These assessment opportunities range from informal observations, such as *Think Pair Share* and some Extension activities, to more formal written assessments. These Student Performance Task Assessments (SPTA) are identified in the *Tell It Again! Read-Aloud Anthology* with this icon: ✨. There is also an end-of-domain summative assessment. Use the Tens Conversion Chart located in the Appendix to convert a raw score on each SPTA into a Tens score. On the same page, you will also find the rubric for recording observational Tens scores.

**Above and Beyond**

In the *Tell It Again! Read-Aloud Anthology for Early World Civilizations*, there are numerous opportunities in the lessons and the Pausing Points to challenge students who are ready to attempt activities that are above grade level. These activities are labeled “Above and Beyond” and are identified with this icon: 🪐.

**Supplemental Guide**

Accompanying the *Tell It Again! Read-Aloud Anthology* is a *Supplemental Guide* designed specifically to assist educators who serve students with limited English oral language skills or students with limited home literary experience, which may include English Language Learners (ELLs) and children with special needs. Teachers whose students would benefit from enhanced oral language practice may opt to use the *Supplemental Guide* as their primary guide in the Listening & Learning Strand. Teachers may also choose to begin a domain by using the *Supplemental Guide* as their primary guide before transitioning to the *Tell It Again! Read-Aloud Anthology*, or may choose individual activities from the *Supplemental Guide* to augment the content covered in the *Tell It Again! Read-Aloud Anthology*.

The *Supplemental Guide* activities that may be particularly relevant to any classroom are the Multiple Meaning Word Activities and accompanying Multiple Meaning Word Posters, which help students
determine and clarify different meanings of words; Syntactic Awareness Activities, which call students’ attention to sentence structure, word order, and grammar; and Vocabulary Instructional Activities, which place importance on building students’ general academic, or Tier 2, vocabulary. These activities afford all students additional opportunities to acquire a richer understanding of the English language. Several of these activities have been included as Extensions in the Tell It Again! Read-Aloud Anthology. In addition, several words in the Tell It Again! Read-Aloud Anthology are underlined, indicating that they are multiple-meaning words. The accompanying sidebars explain some of the more common alternate meanings of these words. Supplemental Guide activities included in the Tell It Again! Read-Aloud Anthology are identified with this icon: \[\Rightarrow\].

**Recommended Resources for Early World Civilizations**

The Tell It Again! Read-Aloud Anthology includes a number of opportunities in Extensions, Pausing Points, and the Domain Review for teachers to select trade books from this list to reinforce domain concepts through the use of authentic literature. In addition, teachers should consider other times throughout the day when they might infuse authentic domain-related literature. If you recommend that families read aloud with their child each night, you may wish to suggest that they choose titles from this trade book list to reinforce the domain concepts. You might also consider creating a classroom lending library, allowing students to borrow domain-related books to read at home with their families.

**Trade Book List**


**Mesopotamia**


Ancient Egypt


Three World Religions


Websites and Other Resources

**Student Resources**

1. **Egypt Game**
   http://www.neok12.com/diagram/Ancient-Egypt-01.htm

2. **Geography of Egypt**
   http://kids.nationalgeographic.com/kids/places/find/egypt

3. **World Religion Images (text may be too advanced for most students)**
   http://www.uri.org/kids/world.htm

4. **Ziggurats**

**Teacher Resources**

5. **Brooklyn Museum**
   http://www.brooklynmuseum.org/exhibitions

6. **Church of the Holy Sepulchre**

7. **Dome of the Rock**

8. **Western Wall**

9. **World Religions for Teachers**
   http://www.bbc.co.uk/schools/religion/
Lesson Objectives

Core Content Objectives

Students will:

✓ Locate the area known as Mesopotamia on a world map or globe and identify it as a part of Asia

✓ Explain the importance of the Tigris and Euphrates rivers and the use of canals to support farming

✓ Describe the city of Babylon

Language Arts Objectives

The following language arts objectives are addressed in this lesson. Objectives aligning with the Common Core State Standards are noted with the corresponding standard in parentheses. Refer to the Alignment Chart for additional standards addressed in all lessons in this domain.

Students will:

✓ Describe the connection between the location of Mesopotamia near the Tigris and Euphrates rivers and the ability to farm (RI.1.3)

✓ Describe an illustration of a desert and use pictures and details in “A Father and His Son in Mesopotamia” to describe the read-aloud’s key ideas (RI.1.7)

✓ With assistance, categorize and organize facts and information from “A Father and His Son in Mesopotamia” to answer questions (W.1.8)

✓ Ask and answer what questions orally, requiring literal recall and understanding of the details or facts of “A Father and His Son in Mesopotamia” (SL.1.2)

✓ Identify new meanings for the word banks and apply them accurately
Share writing with others

### Core Vocabulary

**banks, n.** The land that slopes down on the sides of a river
*Example:* After they fished, the children sat on the banks of the river to eat their lunch.
*Variation(s):* bank

**canals, n.** Ditches dug into the land to move water from one place to another; may also be used for transportation
*Example:* The city built canals so that ships could bring goods to the people.
*Variation(s):* canal

**flow, v.** To move continually
*Example:* The water will flow from the faucet over my hands and into the sink.
*Variation(s):* flows, flowed, flowing

**reservoir, n.** A natural or man-made area where water is stored for future use
*Example:* The city has a reservoir to supply its people with water.
*Variation(s):* reservoirs

**trade, v.** To exchange goods
*Example:* I plan to trade my crayons for markers when we have our market day at school.
*Variation(s):* trades, traded, trading

### At a Glance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exercise</th>
<th>Materials</th>
<th>Minutes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Introducing the Read-Aloud</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Domain Introduction</td>
<td>world map or globe</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where Are We?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purpose for Listening</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Presenting the Read-Aloud</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Father and His Son in Mesopotamia</td>
<td>world map or globe</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Discussing the Read-Aloud</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comprehension Questions</td>
<td>world map or globe</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Word Work: Trade</td>
<td>drawing paper, globe</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Extensions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exercise</th>
<th>Materials</th>
<th>Minutes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Civilizations Chart</strong></td>
<td>Image Cards 1, 2; tape; chart paper; [This exercise requires advance preparation.]</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Multiple Meaning Word Activity:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Banks</td>
<td>Poster 1M (Banks)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Take-Home Material</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Family Letter</td>
<td>Instructional Masters 1B-1, 1B-2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Introducing the Read-Aloud

Domain Introduction

Tell students that for the next few weeks they will pretend to travel back in time to learn how two different groups of people lived thousands of years ago. Explain to students that the word ancient can be used to describe the time period in which these people lived. Tell students that the word ancient means very, very old or long, long ago. Tell students that they will learn how people lived in a place known as Mesopotamia and also how people lived in ancient Egypt.

Explain to students that these people lived differently from the way we do today. There were no cars yet, no computers, no televisions or radios, no electric lights, and no refrigerators to keep food fresh and delicious. Tell students that although the lives of the ancient people who lived long ago were very different, there were many ways that we are just like them. These ancient peoples laughed together; they loved the people in their families and tried hard to take care of them; they helped their friends; and they wanted to live safely and comfortably.

Where Are We?

Show students a world map or globe. Ask them to locate Asia. Point to the area known as the Middle East. Tell students that this area of Asia is called the Middle East. Point to Iraq and explain that Iraq is one of the countries in the Middle East. Ask students if they have heard of the Middle East or Iraq. Have students briefly share any knowledge they have of this area.

Explain that people have been living in this area for thousands of years, but the area has not always been called the Middle East. Explain that, in ancient times, part of it was called Mesopotamia.
Show image 1A-1: The desert

Have students describe the picture. Explain to students that this is a picture of the desert and that the land in Mesopotamia was mostly desert. Explain to students that it does not rain very much in the desert. It is so dry that it is hard for many plants and animals to live there.

Tell students that it is easier for plants and animals to live in areas with fertile land. Explain that **fertile** means the soil in these areas is rich in nutrients and water, making it easier for plants and animals to flourish.

Show image 1A-2: Warad and Iddin

Explain to students that in today’s read-aloud they will hear about a special part of Mesopotamia where the land isn’t desert; it is fertile (meaning it is easy for plants and animals to live there). They will hear a made-up story about a father and his son who lived in Mesopotamia in ancient times. Point to the man in the picture, and explain that this character is the father whose name is Warad (WAH-red). Have students repeat the name Warad after you. Point to the boy in the picture, and explain that this character is Warad’s son, Iddin (ID-din). Have students repeat the name Iddin after you. Tell students that even though this is a story with made-up characters, Mesopotamia was a real place a long time ago.

**Purpose for Listening**

Tell students that there were rivers in Mesopotamia just as there are rivers in the United States. These rivers made the land around them fertile so that plants and animals could live around them. Tell the class to listen carefully to learn the names of two rivers in Mesopotamia and why they were important to the people who lived in this area.
Almost four thousand years ago, a father and a son were walking together on the banks of a great river, close to what was then possibly the biggest city in the world: Babylon. The father, whose name was Warad (WAH-red), said to his son Iddin (ID-din), “See, my son: the great Euphrates (you-FRAY-teez) River. If this river did not flow, there would be no wonderful city of Babylon, no palaces, no gardens, not even any houses.”

Iddin said, “But I don’t understand, Father. Did all these things appear out of the water?”

“No,” his father laughed. “No one just floated the palaces down here or pulled them from the water. Let me explain, Iddin.” They sat down on a bench overlooking the wide river, which rolled before them, reflecting the palaces and religious temples that rose high on both banks of the river.

“The first people who lived along this river realized that the land surrounding the river had rich soil for planting crops, like wheat and barley for bread. These people settled along the river because the land farther away from the river was desert and the desert is not a very good place to grow crops. So, these people built their homes along the river so that they could grow crops to feed themselves and their families.

“Now, let me ask you a question, Iddin. Why do you think people built our city right here?”

“Because of the water?”

“Yes, the river water kept alive the plants that were grown for food. Now look around.”
And Warad waved his hand in a circle. 

“Now we have our great and beautiful Babylon. Of course, the people that settled in Babylon weren’t the only ones who had the good idea to settle along the river. Other people came and settled up and down the river, forming other towns and cities.

“Soon, people realized they could use the Euphrates for more than just growing food. What else do you think they discovered they could use the river for?” Warad asked his son.

Iddin thought for a moment, then asked, “To carry things from one city to another like we do today?”

“Correct!” his father bellowed. “They traveled in boats up and down the river to trade with people from other cities. The cities soon traded crops, material to make clothing, and other items that they needed. The Euphrates River is not the only river that is used in this way. People also use the Tigris River (TY-gris) to grow crops and to trade with other cities.”

“It is hard to think of a time when people did not use the river for growing crops and for traveling as we do today!” Iddin said.

Warad replied, “That it is. I have more to explain to you. You see, after a while, many people had made their homes along the Euphrates, and some had land farther back from the river. Soon, it was difficult for everyone to reach the water easily. People started wondering if there was a way to get the water from the river to other parts of the city. Soon, they discovered that there was a way!”

Iddin thought for a minute, then exclaimed, “The canals!”

“Yes!” his father continued. “They dug ditches cut into the earth, which we call canals. The water flowed out of the river and through the canals to the areas of the city farther from the river.”
river. Then farmers could grow crops even where the rivers didn’t flow.”

“Our great king, Hammurabi (hah-moo-rah-bee), did the same thing. He had canals dug to move water all over our country from the two great rivers, the Tigris and the Euphrates. And King Hammurabi and his helpers used an ancient way to collect rain water. When the winter rains come, the water doesn’t just wash away downstream. They made the waters run into a reservoir, so that after the rains stopped, there would be water for drinking or for watering crops. Once this was done, people could stay in one place near the river, and make that place better and better, until finally we had . . .”

Show image 1A-9: Warad and Iddin walking on street

“Babylon!” exclaimed Iddin. “Our king, Hammurabi, must be the best king of all, father.”

Warad agreed, “He is, indeed, a great king. And now I think it is time for us to head home, my son.”

Discussing the Read-Aloud

Comprehension Questions

If students have difficulty responding to questions, reread pertinent passages of the read-aloud and/or refer to specific images. If students give one-word answers and/or fail to use read-aloud or domain vocabulary in their responses, acknowledge correct responses by expanding the students’ responses using richer and more complex language. Ask students to answer in complete sentences by having them restate the question in their responses.

1. Literal [Have two students locate the Tigris and Euphrates rivers on a world map or globe.] On what continent are these rivers located? (Asia)

2. Literal Was the land around the rivers fertile land or dry desert in Mesopotamia? (fertile)
3. *Inferential* How were the Euphrates River and the Tigris River important to the Mesopotamians? (People settled near the rivers to grow crops for food; they were used for transportation and for drinking.)

4. *Inferential* Why did the people dig canals? (to move water from the river to other places to support farming, and for transportation)

5. *Literal* Were there cities in Mesopotamia? (yes) What was the name of the city that was the setting of today's read-aloud? (Babylon)

6. *Inferential* Why did people settle in Babylon near the Euphrates River? (People had settled there to grow crops, and it developed into a city.)

7. *Literal* What kinds of goods would the people on the Euphrates and Tigris rivers trade? (crops, clothing, and other items they needed)

8. *Inferential* How would you describe the city of Babylon? (There were many buildings, including a palace; it was near the river, etc.)

9. *Evaluative* Could the Mesopotamians have settled in this area if it had not been on the banks of the Tigris and Euphrates rivers? Why or why not? (No, they needed the water from the rivers to water their crops, to drink, etc.)

[Please continue to model the Question? Pair Share process for students, as necessary, and scaffold students in their use of the process.]

10. *What? Pair Share*: As king questions after a read-aloud is one way to see how much everyone has learned. Think of a question you can ask your neighbor about the read-aloud that starts with the word *what*. For example, you could ask, “What was the setting of today’s read-aloud?” Turn to your neighbor and ask your *what* question. Listen to your neighbor’s response. Then your neighbor will ask a new *what* question, and you will get a chance to respond. I will call on several of you to share your questions with the class.
11. After hearing today’s read-aloud and questions and answers, do you have any remaining questions? [If time permits, you may wish to allow for individual, group, or class research of the text and/or other resources to answer these questions.]

**Word Work: Trade**

1. In the read-aloud you heard, “They traveled in boats up and down the river to *trade* with people from other cities.”

2. Say the word *trade* with me.

3. *Trade* means to exchange one thing for another.

4. My sister wanted me to trade my crayons for her markers.

5. Have you ever traded something with someone? Try to use the word *trade* when you tell about it. [Ask two or three students. If necessary, guide and/or rephrase the students’ responses: “I once traded . . .”]

6. What’s the word we’ve been talking about?

Use a *Drawing and Writing* activity for follow-up. Directions: Draw a picture showing something you have that you would be willing to trade to a friend.

Above and Beyond: For students who are able to do so, have them write a sentence about their drawings, being sure to use the word *trade*. w

Give students the opportunity to share their drawings and writing.

⚠️ Complete Remainder of the Lesson Later in the Day
Civilizations Chart

On a piece of chart paper, draw the following chart. Each section will need to be large enough for an Image Card. This chart will be used throughout the domain to identify and compare components of the civilizations of Mesopotamia and ancient Egypt.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Farming</th>
<th>Cities</th>
<th>Writing</th>
<th>Leaders</th>
<th>Religion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mesopotamia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ancient Egypt</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Show students Image Card 1 (Farming). Talk about the Image Card and explain that it is an illustration of the canals in Mesopotamia. Have students share what they learned from the read-aloud about farming in Mesopotamia and its connection with the Tigris and Euphrates rivers. Tell students that you are going to place the Image Card on the chart in the Farming column to help them remember that farming took place in Mesopotamia.

Show students Image Card 2 (Babylon). Talk about the Image Card and explain that it shows the city of Babylon. Have students share what they learned from the read-aloud about Babylon. Tell students that you are going to place the Image Card on the chart in the Cities column to help them remember that there were cities in Mesopotamia.
**Multiple Meaning Word Activity**

**Associated Phrase: Banks**

1. [Show Poster 1M: Banks.] In the read-aloud you heard, “Almost four thousand years ago, a father and a son were walking together on the **banks** of a great river . . .” [Have students hold up one, two, or three fingers to indicate which image on the poster shows this meaning.]

2. **Banks** can also mean something else. **Banks** can also refer to businesses where people can either keep their money or borrow money that they later have to pay back. [Have students hold up one, two, or three fingers to indicate which image on the poster shows this meaning.]

3. **Banks** can also mean small containers in which you can save your money. [Have students hold up one, two, or three fingers to indicate which image on the poster shows this meaning.]

4. [Point to the image of river banks.] With your partner, talk about what you think of when you see these kinds of banks. I will call on a few partners to share what they came up with. Try to answer in complete sentences. (When I see these kinds of banks, I think of water, mud, small trees, etc.)

5. [Point to the image of piggy banks.] With your partner, talk about what you think of when you see these kinds of banks. I will call on a few partners to share what they came up with. Try to answer in complete sentences. (When I see these kinds of banks, I think of money, quarters, my allowance, etc.)

6. [Point to the image of banks that are businesses.] With your partner, talk about what you think of when you see these kinds of banks. I will call on a few partners to share what they came up with. Try to answer in complete sentences. (When I see these kinds of banks, I think of a building, grown-ups going into the banks, etc.)

**Take-Home Material**

**Family Letter**

Send home Instructional Masters 1B-1 and 1B-2.
Lesson Objectives

Core Content Objectives

Students will:

✓ Locate the area known as Mesopotamia on a world map or globe and identify it as a part of Asia
✓ Identify cuneiform as the system of writing used in Mesopotamia
✓ Explain why a written language is important to the development of a civilization
✓ Explain the significance of the Code of Hammurabi
✓ Explain why rules and laws are important to the development of a civilization
✓ Explain the ways in which a leader is important to the development of a civilization

Language Arts Objectives

The following language arts objectives are addressed in this lesson. Objectives aligning with the Common Core State Standards are noted with the corresponding standard in parentheses. Refer to the Alignment Chart for additional standards addressed in all lessons in this domain.

Students will:

✓ Identify the main topic and retell key details of “Writing in Mesopotamia” (RI.1.2)
✓ With assistance, categorize and organize facts and information from “Writing in Mesopotamia” to answer questions (W.1.8)
✓ Explain the meaning of “The Golden Rule” and use in appropriate contexts (L.1.6)
Prior to listening to “Writing in Mesopotamia,” identify orally what they know or have learned about Mesopotamia

Share writing with others

Core Vocabulary

cuneiform, *n.* The system of writing in Mesopotamia using wedge-shaped symbols
Example: The teacher showed her class the cuneiform on the ancient tablet.
Variation(s): none

records, *n.* Written information
Example: My mother keeps records of all the people who visit her house by writing down their names in a special book.
Variation(s): record

scribes, *n.* People whose job it is to write things down
Example: The scribes wrote the laws on clay tablets.
Variation(s): scribe

symbols, *n.* Pictures or shapes used to stand for something else
Example: The letters of our alphabet are symbols for sounds.
Variation(s): symbol

tables, *n.* Flat slabs of stone, clay, wood, or paper used especially for writing
Example: The explorer found a very old poem carved into stone tablets by people long ago.
Variation(s): tablet

At a Glance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exercise</th>
<th>Materials</th>
<th>Minutes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Where Are We?</td>
<td>world map or globe</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What Have We Already Learned?</td>
<td>Civilizations Chart from previous lesson</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Essential Background Information or Terms</td>
<td>examples of writing systems (Greek, Arabic, or Chinese)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purpose for Listening</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Presenting the Read-Aloud            | Writing in Mesopotamia                        | 15      |

| Discussing the Read-Aloud            | Comprehension Questions                       | 10      |
|                                      | Word Work: Symbols                            | 5       |

| Extensions                           | Civilizations Chart                           |         |
|                                      | Image Cards 3, 4                              |         |
|                                      | Sayings and Phrases: The Golden Rule          |         |
|                                      | chart paper, chalkboard, or whiteboard; drawing paper, drawing tools | 20      |
Where Are We?

Each day, at the beginning of each lesson in this domain, have a different student locate the area known as Mesopotamia on a world map or globe and identify it as a part of Asia. Remind students that this entire region of the world is now called the Middle East and that the present-day country of Iraq is located there.

What Have We Already Learned?

**Show image 2A-4: Iddin pointing to cuneiform**

Remind students that in the previous lesson, they learned about a father and son in Mesopotamia. Have a student point out Iddin in the picture (the boy pointing to the cuneiform), and have another student point out his father, Warad, in the picture. If students have trouble, point out the characters for them and have them repeat their names after you. Ask students if they recall what Warad and his son Iddin were talking about as they walked along the banks of the Euphrates River. Students should be able to point out that Warad was explaining the importance of the river to farming and the development of the city of Babylon. You may wish to review what you have completed thus far in the Civilizations Chart begun in the last extension activity.

Ask, “Who remembers what canals are?” (Canals are ditches dug into the land to move water from one place to another. Canals may also be used for transportation.) Say to students, “King Hammurabi was responsible for building canals in Mesopotamia. He had canals dug to move water all over Mesopotamia from the two rivers, the Tigris and the Euphrates. King Hammurabi and his helpers also collected waters in a reservoir, so that there would be water for drinking and for watering crops. This allowed
people to settle in one place near the river, and make that place better and better, until it became the city of Babylon. Do you think Hammurabi was a good leader?” (Answers may vary.)

**Essential Background Information or Terms**

Explain that today’s read-aloud is a continuation of the read-aloud they heard previously. They will hear more about Warad and Iddin and they will meet another boy from Mesopotamia, Iddin’s brother, Amur (AH-moor). Point to Amur in the picture, and have students repeat the name Amur after you. Tell students that, as the father and his sons talk, they will learn more about King Hammurabi and the decisions he made that helped shape the Mesopotamian civilization.

The main topic, or main idea, of today’s read-aloud is writing. Ask students how people use writing today. Encourage them to identify a wide range of uses for writing, including recording rules, making lists, communicating safety information, or expressing one’s thoughts.

Ask students what is needed in order to write in English. (e.g., pens or pencils, paper, knowledge of sounds and letters to represent them, etc.)

Remind students that people all over the world speak and write in many different languages. Ask students if all languages use the same shapes to write the words they say. You may find it helpful to show students an example of Greek, Arabic, or Chinese writing.

**Purpose for Listening**

Tell students to listen carefully to find out what Mesopotamian writing looked like and how people used it, as well as what else King Hammurabi did for Mesopotamia.
Writing in Mesopotamia

The day after Iddin and his father, Warad, had their conversation about King Hammurabi, Iddin and his older brother, Amur (AH-moor), were out kicking a leather ball. When the boys went inside to cool off, they found their father, Warad, sitting at a wide table in the sunny, central courtyard around which the house was built. On the table lay several tablets, smooth rectangles made of clay.

Wedge-shaped symbols were pressed into the clay. This sort of writing is called cuneiform (kyoo-NEE-i-form). “What are you reading, father?” Amur asked.

Warad looked up and smiled. “This first tablet shows how much cloth we have sold this month in our store. The other shows how much we sold during the same time last year. I am comparing the numbers, deciding how much cloth I will need to buy from the weaver for the store next week. These sorts of records help me remember how much we sold last year. Otherwise, I would probably forget.”

Iddin sat down on a wooden bench next to the table. “Father,” he asked, “who figured out how to write in the first place? Who decided what each symbol meant?”

Before Warad could answer, Amur said, “The king did it. Isn’t that right, Father? King Hammurabi can do anything.”
Warad said gently, “Well, Amur, our king has done many wonderful things. But someone else made up writing even before the king was born. And Iddin, I’m afraid we don’t know exactly who it was that figured out how to write and decided what each symbol should mean.”

Iddin laughed. “Maybe they should have kept a record on clay tablets in cuneiform!”

Warad laughed, too. “Well, whoever it was did us all a great favor. If we couldn’t write, it would be harder to remember information for long periods of time . . .”

Iddin interrupted, “Like how much cloth you sold last year?”

Warad smiled, “Like how much cloth I sold last year.”

Show image 2A-5: Scribes

“People around here, between the Tigris (TY-gris) and the Euphrates (you-FRAY-teez) rivers, have known about writing for nearly fifteen hundred years. That’s important. In fact, King Hammurabi may not have invented writing, but he had a great idea about how to use it. Hammurabi was so powerful that he made up a set of rules, or laws, for people to live by, so that they would know how to behave in different situations. Then he had his scribes write them down. Actually, your uncle, my brother, is one of the scribes who helped the king write down the laws of our country. This set of laws is called the Code of Hammurabi. There are 282 laws in all.”

“Thar’s a lot of laws!” exclaimed Iddin. “That must have taken Uncle and the other scribes a long time to write.” He hesitated. “How did Uncle get to be a scribe anyway?”

“Our father, your grandfather, was a scribe, and that is why all our family members can read and write. Your grandfather taught your uncle, and he taught me. We are lucky that we know how to read and write. And if your uncle and the others had not written down all the laws of King Hammurabi . . .”

“. . . who could remember all 282 of them?” Iddin finished.
“Exactly,” said Warad. “Amur, what do you think would happen if we couldn’t remember the laws?”

The older boy said, “If we couldn’t remember the laws, people wouldn’t follow the same rules. Someone visiting another town might break that town’s rules without even knowing it.”

Warad said, “And Iddin, what if I gave you one set of rules, and I gave Amur a different set of rules?”

“That wouldn’t be fair,” said Iddin, “unless I liked my rules better than his.”

They all laughed. Then Amur said, “I like writing for another reason, too. After Uncle visited us, I wrote down that story he told us about being caught in a sandstorm in the desert, and how they had to lie down and cover their heads when the strong wind blew the sand so hard all around them. I read it to Iddin last night.”

Iddin smiled. “Maybe you should write a story about us, Amur.”

His brother thought about it. Then he answered, “That is a funny idea, Iddin. Who would want to read a story about us?” Then the boys went back outside to play some more.

**Discussing the Read-Aloud**

**Comprehension Questions**

If students have difficulty responding to questions, reread pertinent passages of the read-aloud and/or refer to specific images. If students give one-word answers and/or fail to use read-aloud or domain vocabulary in their responses, acknowledge correct responses by expanding the students’ responses using richer and more complex language. Ask students to answer in complete sentences by having them restate the question in their responses.

1. **Inferential** What was the main topic, or main idea, of today’s read-aloud? (the importance of writing to civilizations such as the Mesopotamians)
2. **Literal** What was Mesopotamian writing called? (cuneiform)

3. **Inferential** Describe how the Mesopotamians made cuneiform writing. (Wedge-shaped symbols, or markings, were pressed into tablets, which were smooth rectangles made of clay.)

4. **Inferential** Why was writing important to Warad? (He used it to keep track of how much cloth he had sold.)

5. **Inferential** Why was writing important to Amur? (He used it to write down a story he had heard. Without it, he might have forgotten the story.)

6. **Literal** What was the Code of Hammurabi? (the many laws that Hammurabi, the king of Mesopotamia, had written down and which everyone was expected to follow)

7. **Literal** Who wrote down the Code of Hammurabi? (scribes)
   
   [Note: Make sure students understand that only certain people were taught to write in Mesopotamia.]

8. **Inferential** Why was writing important to a civilization such as Mesopotamia? (It helped them to write down and remember their laws. Without writing, the laws might have changed much more frequently.)

9. **Evaluative** What would life in ancient Mesopotamia have been like without writing? (Answers may vary.)

   [Please continue to model the *Think Pair Share* process for students, as necessary, and scaffold students in their use of the process.]

I am going to ask a question. I will give you a minute to think about the question, and then I will ask you to turn to your neighbor and discuss the question. Finally, I will call on several of you to share what you discussed with your partner.

10. **Evaluative** *Think Pair Share:* How was Mesopotamian writing different from ours? Are there any ways in which it was the same? (Answers may vary.)

11. After hearing today’s read-aloud and questions and answers, do you have any remaining questions? [If time permits, you may wish to allow for individual, group, or class research of the text and/or other resources to answer these questions.]
1. In the read-aloud you heard, “Wedge-shaped symbols were pressed into the clay.”

2. Say the word symbols with me.

3. Symbols are things, like shapes, marks, or pictures, which stand for something else.

4. Question marks are symbols that are sometimes used at the end of sentences.

5. Can you think of any other symbols that you have seen? Perhaps there are some right here in the classroom. Try to use the word symbols when you tell about it. [Ask two or three students. If necessary, guide and/or rephrase the students’ responses: “______ are symbols for . . .”]

6. What’s the word we’ve been talking about?

   Use a Making Choices activity for follow-up. Directions: I will read several sentences to you. If the sentence describes a symbol, you should say, “That is a symbol.” If it does not describe a symbol, you should say, “That is not a symbol.”

1. The red traffic light tells the cars to stop. (That is a symbol.)

2. The letters I write stand for sounds. (That is a symbol.)

3. My sister Mara is very pretty. (That is not a symbol.)

4. The weather reporter shows a picture of a sun to tell viewers that it will be a sunny day. (That is a symbol.)

5. My dog’s name is Gunther. (That is not a symbol.)

Complete Remainder of the Lesson Later in the Day
Extensions 20 minutes

Civilizations Chart

Show students Image Card 3 (Cuneiform). Talk about the Image Card and have students share what they learned from the read-aloud about cuneiform and writing in Mesopotamia. Tell students that you are going to place the Image Card in the Writing column on the Civilizations Chart to help them remember that Mesopotamians developed a system of writing.

Show students Image Card 4 (Code of Hammurabi). Talk about the Image Card and tell students that Hammurabi’s Code was carved into a stone pillar and was not written on paper; this is a picture of the pillar that contains the Code of Hammurabi. Have students share what they learned from the read-aloud about Hammurabi and the Code of Hammurabi. Explain that the 282 laws were inscribed on a huge pillar. Tell students that you are going to place the Image Card in the Leaders column on the chart to help them remember that Mesopotamians had a leader (king) and laws. Explain that a leader is very important to the development of a civilization. Remind them that King Hammurabi was not only responsible for writing all the laws, but he also oversaw the building of the canals they previously heard about.

Sayings and Phrases: The Golden Rule 5 minutes

Remind students that Warad said that writing was important because it enabled them to write down their laws in order to remember them more easily. Tell students that there is one “law,” or rule, that many different people in many times and places called “the Golden Rule,” and that many people still follow this rule today. It is not an official law in our country, but it is a famous saying that many people try to live by. “Do unto others as you would have them do unto you.”
Write the saying on a piece of chart paper, a chalkboard, or a whiteboard. Explain that you are writing down the saying, but that they are not expected to be able to read what you write because they are still learning all the rules for decoding. Emphasize that you are writing the saying so that you don’t forget, just like Warad said, and tell them that you will read the words to them.

Repeat the saying and explain that “unto” means “to.” Ask students what they think it means to “do unto others as you would have them do unto you.” (Treat other people with the same kindness, respect, and consideration with which you would like them to treat you.)

Discuss how students might apply the Golden Rule in the following situations:

1. Your friend falls down and scrapes her knee on the playground.
2. The person sitting next to you answers a question incorrectly in class.
3. Your little brother or sister is annoying you.
4. You notice that a new student has no one to play with.

Ask students to think of a time that they have followed the saying, “Do unto others as you would have them do unto you.” Tell them that you would like for them to draw a picture of it. Then, they should each write a sentence about their pictures. Some students may need to dictate their sentences to an adult, whereas others may write a word or two or a complete sentence. Have students share their drawings and writing with a partner or the class.
Lesson Objectives

Core Content Objectives

Students will:

✓ Locate the area known as Mesopotamia on a world map or globe and identify it as a part of Asia
✓ Explain the significance of gods/goddesses, ziggurats, temples, and priests in Mesopotamia
✓ Describe key components of a civilization

Language Arts Objectives

The following language arts objectives are addressed in this lesson. Objectives aligning with the Common Core State Standards are noted with the corresponding standard in parentheses. Refer to the Alignment Chart for additional standards addressed in all lessons in this domain.

Students will:

✓ Describe the connection between gods and goddesses and the ways Mesopotamians described natural events (RI.1.3)
✓ Describe an illustration of a ziggurat and use pictures and details in “The Religion of Babylon” to describe the read-aloud’s key ideas (RI.1.7)
✓ With guidance and support from adults, respond to questions and suggestions from peers on an interactive illustration focusing on facts from “The Religion of Babylon” to add details and to strengthen writing as needed (W.1.5)
✓ With assistance, categorize and organize facts and information from “The Religion of Babylon” to answer questions (W.1.8)
✓ Add drawings to descriptions of details from “The Religion of Babylon” to clarify ideas and thoughts (SL.1.5)
Prior to listening to “The Religion of Babylon,” identify orally what they know and have learned about Mesopotamia

Share writing with others

Core Vocabulary

gods/goddesses, n. Powerful unseen rulers, both male and female, that people living in ancient times believed controlled what happened in the world
Example: The people thanked the gods and goddesses for providing good weather.
Variation(s): god, goddess

priests, n. Religious leaders
Example: The priests left food for the gods, hoping they would protect the soldiers in battle.
Variation(s): priest

religion, n. The belief in and worship of a superhuman, controlling power, such as a personal God or gods
Example: Some holidays, such as Hanukkah and Easter, are connected to a religion.
Variation(s): religions

temples, n. Buildings created for worship and practicing religious beliefs
Example: Ancient temples were often beautiful buildings crowned in gold.
Variation(s): temple

ziggurat, n. A tall pyramid-shaped structure with a temple at the top
Example: The priest cared for the sun god’s statue at the top of the ziggurat.
Variation(s): ziggurats

At a Glance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exercise</th>
<th>Materials</th>
<th>Minutes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Introducing the Read-Aloud</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where Are We?</td>
<td>world map or globe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What Have We Already Learned?</td>
<td>Image Cards 1–4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Essential Background Information or Terms</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purpose for Listening</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Presenting the Read-Aloud</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Religion of Babylon</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Discussing the Read-Aloud</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comprehension Questions</td>
<td>world map or globe</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Word Work: Religion</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Extensions</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Civilizations Chart</td>
<td>Image Card 5</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interactive Illustrations</td>
<td>drawing paper, drawing tools</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Introducing the Read-Aloud 10 minutes

Where Are We?
Each day, have a different student locate the area known as Mesopotamia on a world map or globe and identify it as a part of Asia. Remind students that this entire region of the world is now called the Middle East and that the present-day country of Iraq is located there.

What Have We Already Learned?
Divide the class into four groups. Give each group one of the Image Cards from the chart: Image Card 1 (Farming), Image Card 2 (Babylon), Image Card 3 (Cuneiform), and Image Card 4 (Code of Hammurabi). Tell students that you will give them a few minutes in their groups to talk about the Image Card and what they have learned about the Mesopotamian civilization. Then, the class will come back together and each group will have a few minutes to share with the class.

Show image 2A-6: The family thinking about writing
Remind students that in the previous lesson, they heard a story about a father, Warad, and his sons, Iddin and Amur, in Mesopotamia. Tell students that today they will hear more about Warad and his son Amur.

Have a student point out Amur in the picture and have another student point out Warad in the picture. If students have trouble, point out the characters for them and have them repeat their names after you.
Tell students that they are going to learn about something else that was important to the people of Mesopotamia: religion. Explain that religion is a system of beliefs, often used to explain the world and the way people should live in it.

Show image 3A-1: Mesopotamian looking at desert sky

Say:

A long, long time ago, before people knew much about science to explain how the world works, they wondered about nearly everything, just as we do today. But they didn’t have many answers yet.

They might say, “The wind is blowing from the east. Yesterday it was blowing from the west. Why doesn’t the wind always blow from the same direction?”

They might look up at the night sky and ask, “Why don’t those stars fall down and hit us on the head?”

They might wonder, “Why is the ocean over there and the land over here? How come everything isn’t dry land, or all ocean?” They just didn’t know.

Sometimes it took a long time to get the right answers. Someone would learn one part of the answer, and someone else would add something to it. This would go on and on, until at last someone figured out the answer. Learning a bit at a time like this might take hundreds, or even thousands, of years.

And guess what: it is still going on! We are still learning new things based on what people before us figured out. That is one reason it’s so important to be able to read and write: so we can learn what other people have learned and tell other people what we discover.
Way back in time, one explanation some people came up with was that the world was planned and created by powerful beings, male and female, called gods and goddesses. Gods were male, and goddesses were female. They believed that each god and goddess had power over a part of the universe. These stories helped the people feel less confused about their world.

Explain to students that the people of Mesopotamia had a polytheistic religion. Tell students that poly- means many and theistic means having to do with religion. So a polytheistic religion is one in which people believe in many gods and/or goddesses. Have students say the word polytheistic with you. Be sure to stress the prefix poly- when you say it.

Purpose for Listening

Explain to students that the people of Mesopotamia believed in many gods and goddesses that ruled together. Explain that gods are male and goddesses are female. Tell students to listen to find out who the gods and goddesses were and how they were important to the people of Mesopotamia.
The Religion of Babylon

Show image 3A-3: Palace and temple

One day, Warad and his older son, Amur, were walking in the vast city of Babylon. Amur said, “I guess Babylon is the greatest city in all the world, Father. Just look at the palace of King Hammurabi! I don’t suppose any other king has a palace as grand as this one. And although the city is busy and noisy and dirty, our temples, where the priests feed, clothe, and pray to the gods and goddesses for us, are calm and beautiful!”

“Yes, my son,” replied Warad, “the temples are very beautiful. And the priests in charge of our religion make sure the temples stay that way. After all, we want our gods and goddesses to be happy. Why, if the sun god grew angry with us, he might not come up in the sky tomorrow.”

“Well that certainly would not be good,” Amur said. “Then we could not grow food, or see each other clearly.”

“And thank goodness for Marduk, the god of our city.” Warad said. “He protects us and makes sure that we live well. In return, we must be sure to praise him and give him thanks for all he does for us. Let us go and visit the temple of Marduk.”

Show image 3A-4: Amur and Warad looking at ziggurat

Amur happily agreed to go to the temple of Marduk, for it was one of his favorite parts of the city. Even from a distance, they could see the lofty ziggurat, rising up many feet into the air. Its wide steps climbed up and up to the small temple on top. Only the king and the priests of Marduk were allowed to go up there, but anyone could visit the base of the tower.

“Remember, my son,” Warad said, “there are many gods and goddesses besides Marduk that we must give thanks to.”
“I know Father,” Amur sighed. “We believe that each god and goddess has power over a specific part of the universe: one for the sky, one for the water, and one for all the plants growing out of the ground. I am just glad that Marduk is the god of our city and that we have this grand temple for him.”

After admiring the temple for quite a while, Warad and Amur noticed that the light in the sky was fading. Warad said, “The sun god has done his work for the day and is ready to rest. It is time for us to rest as well.”

Then, turning away from the temple of Marduk, Warad and Amur started for home.

Discussing the Read-Aloud 15 minutes

Comprehension Questions 10 minutes

If students have difficulty responding to questions, reread pertinent passages of the read-aloud and/or refer to specific images. If students give one-word answers and/or fail to use read-aloud or domain vocabulary in their responses, acknowledge correct responses by expanding the students’ responses using richer and more complex language. Ask students to answer in complete sentences by having them restate the question in their responses.

1. **Literal** [On a world map or globe, have a student locate the area where Mesopotamia was located.] On what continent was Mesopotamia located? (Asia)

2. **Inferential** Today, you learned that people of long ago did not have scientific answers for the way things happened in their world, such as how the stars stayed in the sky. How did they explain these things? (They told stories about gods and goddesses, who they believed were in charge of different parts of the universe.)
3. **Evaluative** Do you think that gods and goddesses were a good way to explain the workings of the universe? Why or why not? (Answers may vary.)

4. **Inferential** Why was it important for people to write down what they learned about the world? (If they did not write down their discoveries, the people who came after them would ask the same questions over and over again, instead of using what others had learned and asking new questions.)

Show image 3A-3: Palace and temple

5. **Inferential** In today’s read-aloud, you heard Amur tell his father that he thought Babylon was the greatest city in the world. Why did he think so? (Its palace and temples were so beautiful, despite the noise and dirt of the city.)

6. **Literal** [Remind students that the Mesopotamians had a polytheistic religion.] What does the word *poly-* mean? (many) So, did the Mesopotamians believe in one god or many gods and goddesses? (many gods and goddesses)

7. **Literal** Who was responsible for taking care of the city’s temples and making sure that the gods and goddesses were happy? (the priests)

8. **Inferential** What things did the Mesopotamians believe the gods were in charge of? (sun, city, water, sky, etc.)

9. **Literal** At the end of the read-aloud, Amur and Warad visited the temple of Marduk. It was located on top of a much larger building with lots of steps. What was that building called? (ziggurat)

[Please continue to model the *Think Pair Share* process for students, as necessary, and scaffold students in their use of the process.]

I am going to ask a question. I will give you a minute to think about the question, and then I will ask you to turn to your neighbor to discuss the question. Finally, I will call on several of you to share what you discussed with your partner.
10. **Evaluative Think Pair Share:** You have learned a little bit about Amur’s life in ancient Babylon. You have learned about farming and the canals, the development of the city of Babylon along the bank of the Euphrates River, cuneiform writing, King Hammurabi and his code of laws, and finally the ziggurats with the temples on top. If you could trade places with Amur for a day, what would you like to do or see? (Answers may vary.)

11. After hearing today’s read-aloud and questions and answers, do you have any remaining questions? [If time permits, you may wish to allow for individual, group, or class research of the text and/or other resources to answer these questions.]

**Word Work: Religion**

1. In the read-aloud you heard, “And the priests in charge of our *religion* make sure that the temples stay [beautiful].”

2. Say the word *religion* with me.

3. Religion is a set of beliefs, based on faith, that help people explain their world and how to live in it. There are many different religions in the world.

4. My neighbors’ religion calls upon them to go to synagogue on Saturday, whereas my family’s religion calls upon us to go to church on Sunday.

5. Can you name a religion? Try to use the word *religion* when you tell about it. [Ask two or three students. If necessary, guide and/or rephrase the students’ responses: “In Amur’s religion, Marduk is the god of the city.”]

6. What’s the word we’ve been talking about?
Use a *Making Choices* activity for follow-up. Directions: I am going to read some sentences. If the sentence describes something about the religion practiced by the people of Mesopotamia, say, “That’s part of their religion.” If it does not, say, “That’s not part of their religion.”

1. The god of the sun brought the people daylight. (That’s part of their religion.)

2. Only kings and priests were allowed to go into the ziggurat temples. (That’s part of their religion.)

3. Anyone could become a god or goddess. (That’s not part of their religion.)

4. The gods and goddesses wore party hats and ate birthday cake. (That’s not part of their religion.)

5. Priests fed, clothed, and prayed to the gods. (That’s part of their religion.)

⚠️ Complete Remainder of the Lesson Later in the Day
Civilizations Chart

Show students Image Card 5 (Ziggurat). Talk about the Image Card, and have students share what they learned from the read-aloud about ziggurats and religion in Mesopotamia. Tell students that you are going to place the Image Card in the Religion column on the Civilizations Chart to help them remember that the Mesopotamians had a polytheistic religion.

Interactive Illustrations

Explain to students that they will all get to be authors and illustrators in the next activity. Give every student a sheet of paper folded in half. On one half of the paper, have each student write a sentence about the read-aloud they just heard. Pair students with a partner. Ask them to read their sentences aloud and then trade papers. Using the second section on their partner’s paper, have each student draw a picture that goes with his or her partner’s sentence. Then have the students hand the papers back to the original authors. Encourage the authors to add descriptive words to his or her original sentence using carets (a wedge-shaped mark used to show that a word has been inserted), and hand the papers back to the illustrators to draw more details into the illustration. Allow several students to share and discuss how their partners’ illustrations differed from the pictures they had imagined in their heads when they wrote their sentences. As students discuss the illustrations, remember to repeat and expand upon each response using richer and more complex language, including, if possible, any read-aloud vocabulary.

Note: You may wish to suggest a few extra possibilities for illustrations such as gods and goddesses, the city of Babylon, or perhaps an illustration that shows the difference between the city and the temples.
Lesson Objectives

Core Content Objectives

Students will:

✓ Locate the area known as Mesopotamia on a world map or globe and identify it as a part of Asia
✓ Explain the importance of the Tigris and Euphrates rivers and canals to support farming and the development of the city of Babylon
✓ Describe the city of Babylon and the Hanging Gardens
✓ Explain the ways in which a leader is important to the development of a civilization
✓ Identify Mesopotamia as the “Cradle of Civilization”
✓ Describe key components of a civilization
✓ Describe how a civilization evolves and changes over time

Language Arts Objectives

The following language arts objectives are addressed in this lesson. Objectives aligning with the Common Core State Standards are noted with the corresponding standard in parentheses. Refer to the Alignment Chart for additional standards addressed in all lessons in this domain.

Students will:

✓ Identify who is narrating “The Hanging Gardens of Babylon” at various points in the story (RL.1.6)
✓ Describe the connection between King Nebuchadnezzar and the Hanging Gardens of Babylon (RL.1.3)
✓ Describe an illustration of a caravan of travelers and use pictures and details in “The Hanging Gardens of Babylon” to describe the read-aloud’s key ideas (RI.1.7)
✓ Make personal connections, in writing, between the way they live in the present and the way people lived in the time of Hammurabi and Nebuchadnezzar (W.1.8)

✓ With assistance, categorize and organize facts and information from “The Hanging Gardens of Babylon” in a chart and in a timeline to answer questions (W.1.8)

✓ Ask and answer what questions orally, requiring literal recall and understanding of the details or facts of “The Hanging Gardens of Babylon” (SL.1.2)

✓ Add drawings to descriptions of events that happened in ancient times and events that happened in modern times (SL.1.5)

✓ Prior to listening to “The Hanging Gardens of Babylon,” identify orally what they know and have learned about Babylon, the Euphrates River, and King Hammurabi

✓ With assistance, create and interpret timelines and lifelines related to “The Hanging Gardens of Babylon”

✓ Share writing with others

Core Vocabulary

**caravan, n.** A traveling group

*Example:* The caravan moved together from city to city, selling their goods.

*Variation(s):* caravans

**chariots, n.** Two-wheeled or four-wheeled horse-drawn vehicles used in ancient times

*Example:* The soldiers stood tall as they drove their chariots into battle.

*Variation(s):* chariot

**merchant, n.** Someone who buys and sells goods

*Example:* Mother bought apples from the fruit merchant.

*Variation(s):* merchants

**platforms, n.** Flat, raised structures used to keep things off the ground

*Example:* The musicians stood on platforms so the crowd could see them better.

*Variation(s):* platform
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>At a Glance</strong></th>
<th><strong>Exercise</strong></th>
<th><strong>Materials</strong></th>
<th><strong>Minutes</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Introducing the Read-Aloud</strong></td>
<td>Where Are We?</td>
<td>world map or globe</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Essential Background Information or Terms</td>
<td>Civilizations Chart; Image Cards 1–5</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What Have We Already Learned?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Purpose for Listening</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Presenting the Read-Aloud</strong></td>
<td>The Hanging Gardens of Babylon</td>
<td></td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Discussing the Read-Aloud</strong></td>
<td>Comprehension Questions</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Word Work: Caravan</td>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Extensions</strong></td>
<td>Timeline</td>
<td>Image Cards 4, 6; chart paper, chalkboard, or whiteboard; index cards; drawing paper, drawing tools</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Civilizations Chart</td>
<td>Image Cards 1–6; Instructional Master 4B-1; drawing tools</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Complete Remainder of the Lesson Later in the Day*
Introducing the Read-Aloud

Where Are We?

Each day, have a different student locate the area known as Mesopotamia on a world map or globe and identify it as a part of Asia. Remind students that this entire region of the world is now called the Middle East and that the present-day country of Iraq is located there.

Essential Background Information or Terms

Use the Civilizations Chart and Image Cards 1–5 to review what has been learned about Mesopotamia.

Explain that Mesopotamia is considered a civilization because the people living there farmed, built cities, developed a form of writing, had leaders, and practiced a religion. Show students the Image Card that represents each part of civilization as you talk about it. Groups of people around the world, in ancient times and modern times, have done these five things. There have been, and still are, many civilizations.

Explain to students that the read-aloud they will hear today says that Mesopotamia is sometimes called the “cradle of civilization.” Ask them to guess what that term might mean. Talk about the word cradle—who uses a cradle (baby); at what stage of life (beginning); etc. Explain that Mesopotamia was one of the first-known civilizations. It had all the important components listed on the Civilizations Chart, things that define a civilization.

What Have We Already Learned?

Tell students that in today’s read-aloud, with the help of their imaginations, they will travel back in time and be taken on a tour of the city of Babylon by a narrator who knows the city well. Ask students what they remember about Babylon. (on the banks of the Euphrates, home of King Hammurabi, home of Warad and his family)
Tell students that today’s read-aloud takes place more than a thousand years after Warad, Iddin, and Amur lived in Babylon when Hammurabi was the king.

Explain to students that a new king ruled Babylon at this time.

Say, “Do you remember in a previous lesson I asked you what you would like to do or see if you could trade places with Amur for a day? Well, how would you like to go back in time during our read-aloud to Babylon a thousand years after Warad, Iddin, and Amur lived? Let’s go!”

Purpose for Listening

Tell students to listen to find out what changes have occurred in Babylon over the years and to find out more about the new king who ruled Babylon at that time.
The Hanging Gardens of Babylon

Show image 4A-1: City of Babylon on banks of Euphrates

You may remember that Babylon stood on the banks of the Euphrates (you-FRAY-teez) River and was the home of King Hammurabi (hah-moo-RAH-bee), who wrote the laws called “The Code of Hammurabi.”

Show image 4A-2: Nebuchadnezzar sitting on throne

Well, many years after Hammurabi ruled Babylon, there was another famous king in Babylon with another long name. This king’s name was Nebuchadnezzar (NEB-oo-cud-NEZ-ur). That could be a hard name to say, but everyone in Babylon learned it.  

Show image 4A-3: Caravan of travelers on donkeys

Here we find a whole group of travelers that make up a caravan headed for Babylon. Let’s pretend that you and I are traveling to Babylon with this caravan. We have been traveling for weeks to get there so that we can sell fine cotton cloth, which for now is all rolled up on the backs of our donkeys. Most of us are hoping to sell things in Babylon and then buy new things to trade back home. There are guides and guards to lead us through the desert and to protect us from bandits on the way. Some of the travelers actually come from Babylon, including a merchant named Ili (I-lee), with whom we have become friends. Ili has been away from home for months, and he is glad to be getting home to Babylon. As we approach the high walls of the city, you tell him, “I have seen lots of cities with walls, but I have never seen a wall as big as this one.”

“Yes,” Ili tells us proudly, “it is about sixteen thousand cubits long, so that it can go all around Babylon. The wall is so strong and wide that soldiers have room to turn their chariots and horses around on top! But, wait a few minutes, and you will see one of the loveliest sights along that wall.”
A few minutes later, up ahead we glimpse a tall, wide gate in the wall. Blue-glazed bricks cover the gate, glittering in the bright sunlight. “That is the famous Ishtar (ISH-tar) Gate,” Ili tells us. “Our king had it built, then named it for one of Babylon’s goddesses.”

Half an hour later, soldiers at the Ishtar Gate allow our group to enter, and we find ourselves walking on streets made of stone. This feels strange after the weeks we have spent walking on the shifting sands of the desert. Large statues stand every so often along the sides of the street. “Look! The statues are made of gold!”

As we continue on our way, we pass marvelous palaces and busy shops filled with things to buy. Tomorrow we will take our cloth to one of the shop owners, who has promised to buy it.

Our friend Ili has invited us to dinner at his home tonight. “You are lucky,” he says. “The windows of the inn where you will be staying look out upon the most amazing sight in all of Babylon.”

“Do you mean the famous gardens?” I ask.

“Yes,” Ili replies. Then, looking around carefully to make sure that no one else can hear, he says quietly, “King Nebuchadnezzar can be very cruel if he does not like you. But he also has a good side for those he likes or loves; and the person he loves most of all is his queen. The queen came from a land of hills and mountains, with green meadows rich with tall trees and colorful flowers. Some say that after she moved here, the queen missed her home, so our king decided to build her a mountain covered with green plants—the famous Hanging Gardens—so the queen would not be so homesick. But now I must leave you, for this is my street. Remember, you are dining with us this evening. Come hungry, for there will be plenty to eat.” And smiling again, Ili leaves us to continue toward our inn.
We have gone only one block more when you glance over the rooftops ahead and stop in your tracks.

**Show image 4A-7: Hanging Gardens of Babylon**

“Look!” you exclaim, your eyes opening wide in wonder. When I look up, I have the same reaction. There, rising above the roofs of the city, we see the famous man-made hill. Many stories high, it is a series of level **platforms** built one on top of another, and connected by ramps and stairways. Narrowing in size the higher you look, the platforms are almost completely covered with trees, vines, and blooming flowers. The flowers are in such abundance that they hang over the sides and give the place its name. We stand amazed at this sight. How on earth can King Nebuchadnezzar grow all these plants in the middle of hot, dry Babylon?

**Show image 4A-8: Watering of the Hanging Gardens**

That night when we are at dinner, Ili explains. “The level parts of the garden are made of mud bricks covered in lead, so that water does not leak through. Workers had to carry up the tons of dirt to cover those parts, and then they set all the plants in place. The water for the plants is lifted up in buckets attached to a long chain. This chain runs around the edges of two great wheels, one at the bottom of the building and one at the top. Workers turn these wheels with cranks, and the buckets dip into a pond of water at the bottom that is filled from the river nearby. As the wheels keep turning, the buckets become full and are lifted up to the top of the chain, where they empty their contents into another pond. From this pond, channels direct the water down to the different garden levels and out among the plants.”

I tell Ili and his family, “I am amazed at how clever all this is, and how rich King Nebuchadnezzar must be!” But you ask, “And does his queen like it?”

Ili just smiles at us and says, “Wouldn’t you?”
Discussing the Read-Aloud

Comprehension Questions

If students have difficulty responding to questions, reread pertinent passages of the read-aloud and/or refer to specific images. If students give one-word answers and/or fail to use read-aloud or domain vocabulary in their responses, acknowledge correct responses by expanding the students’ responses using richer and more complex language. Ask students to answer in complete sentences by having them restate the question in their responses.

1. **Literal** Where did today’s read-aloud take place? (Babylon)
2. **Literal** This read-aloud begins with a narrator (with whom we are pretending to travel) telling us the story. Which character also narrates the story at times? (Ili, the merchant)
3. **Inferential** What is Mesopotamia called? (the cradle of civilization) Why is it called the cradle of civilization? (It is one of the first-known civilizations.)
4. **Literal** What was the name of the king who ruled Babylon at the time of today’s read-aloud? (Nebuchadnezzar)
5. **Inferential** How was the entrance to the city of Babylon different from the entrance to cities today? (Babylon was surrounded by a high wall, and people entered through a gate.)
6. **Inferential** When the travelers first entered the city, why did the streets feel funny to them? (The streets were made of stone, and they had been walking for weeks through the sandy desert.)
7. **Inferential** Why did Ili call the Hanging Gardens “the most amazing sight in all of Babylon”? (elaborate engineering—built on platforms, plants not native to desert area, required elaborate system of watering)
8. **Literal** According to Ili, why did King Nebuchadnezzar have the Hanging Gardens built? (He built them for his wife, the queen, who missed the green hills and beautiful flowers in her native land.)
9. *Inferential* The narrator/storyteller says he is impressed by how rich King Nebuchadnezzar must be. Name some examples from the story that would make him think that Nebuchadnezzar was a rich king. (the glittering bricks of Ishtar Gate, large gold statues, palaces, the elaborate hanging gardens)

[Please continue to model the *What? Pair Share* process for students, as necessary, and scaffold students in their use of the process.]

10. *What? Pair Share:* Asking questions after a read-aloud is one way to see how much everyone has learned. Think of a question you can ask your neighbor about the read-aloud that starts with the word *what.* For example, you could ask, “What did you learn about in today’s read-aloud?” Turn to your neighbor and ask your *what* question. Listen to your neighbor’s response. Then your neighbor will ask a new *what* question, and you will get a chance to respond. I will call on several of you to share your questions with the class.

11. After hearing today’s read-aloud and questions and answers, do you have any remaining questions? [If time permits, you may wish to allow for individual, group, or class research of the text and/or other resources to answer these questions.]
Word Work: Caravan

1. In the read-aloud you heard, “[A] whole group of travelers that make up a caravan headed for Babylon.”

2. Say the word caravan with me.

3. A caravan is a large group of people traveling together.

4. We moved things to our new house in a caravan: two trucks and two cars traveling together across town.

5. Have you ever traveled anywhere in a caravan: lots of people traveling together to the same place? Try to use the word caravan when you tell about it. [Ask two or three students. If necessary, guide and/or rephrase the students’ responses: “When we went on vacation, our car was the last in a caravan behind my grandparents, aunts, uncles, and cousins.”]

6. What’s the word we’ve been talking about?

Use a Making Choices activity for follow-up. Directions: I am going to name some travelers that are traveling in a caravan and some that are not. If they are traveling in a caravan, say, “That’s a caravan.” If not, say, “That’s not a caravan.”

1. I rode my bike to the playground. (That’s not a caravan.)

2. The circus came to town, carrying their animals with them in many different trucks and trailers. (That’s a caravan.)

3. The army tanks rolled over the desert in a straight line, one after the other. (That’s a caravan.)

4. Mom and Dad went to the grocery store. (That’s not a caravan.)

5. Floats traveled down Main Street, one after the other, during the Thanksgiving Day Parade. (That’s a caravan.)

Complete Remainder of the Lesson Later in the Day
Extensions

Timeline

On a long piece of chart paper, a chalkboard, or a whiteboard, make a timeline of Mesopotamia. Draw a long horizontal line for the timeline. On one end of the timeline write Ancient Times below the line, and place Image Card 4 (Code of Hammurabi) above Ancient Times. Review with students King Hammurabi and the Code of Hammurabi. On the other end of the timeline, write Modern Times below the line.

Explain to students that this is a timeline. A timeline is a line that represents a certain amount of time. Tell students that this timeline represents all the time that has passed from the time of King Hammurabi until today. Explain that it is very easy to see on the timeline that King Hammurabi lived many, many years ago. Explain to students that this part of the timeline represents the time of Warad, Iddin, Amur, and King Hammurabi.

Explain to students that today, what we call “the present,” is represented at the opposite end of the timeline from Hammurabi with the label Modern Times.

Give each student an index card and ask him/her to draw a picture or write a word or phrase describing an important event they remember hearing about that happened in Hammurabi’s time.
Have students share their cards and then place them around Hammurabi on the timeline.

Finally, have each student draw a picture or write a word or phrase about him or herself on a new index card. Have students share their cards and then place them around *Modern Times* on the timeline.

Show students Image Card 6 (Nebuchadnezzar). Explain to students that this is a picture of King Nebuchadnezzar—the king of Babylon whom Ili talked about in today’s read-aloud. Make a vertical line a short distance to the right of the Code of Hammurabi in *Ancient Times* and attach Image Card 6. Explain to students that the read-aloud they heard today took place in ancient times, but it was a thousand years after Hammurabi lived.

Be sure to emphasize to students that the way in which the Mesopotamian civilization developed was largely due to its leaders, such as King Hammurabi and King Nebuchadnezzar, and the decisions they made. Ask students what they think may have happened if King Hammurabi had not developed the Code of Hammurabi, or if King Nebuchadnezzar had not built the Hanging Gardens? Do they think Mesopotamia would have developed differently?

**Civilizations Chart (Instructional Master 4B-1)**

Review with students the term *cradle of civilization*. Using Image Cards 1–6 as prompts, have students name the five components of a civilization: farming, leaders and laws, writing, religion, and cities.

Give each student a copy of Instructional Master 4B-1. Tell them that they are going to create their own Civilizations Chart to share with their families. Have students draw pictures to show what they have learned about the various components of the civilization of Mesopotamia.

» Above and Beyond: For students who are able to do so, have them write words or sentences describing their pictures. Save students’ charts so that they can add ancient Egypt information to it at a later time.
Note to Teacher

You should pause here and spend one day reviewing, reinforcing, or extending the material taught thus far.

You may have students do any combination of the activities listed below, but it is highly recommended that you use the Mid-Domain Student Performance Task Assessment to assess students’ knowledge of Early World Civilizations. The other activities may be done in any order. You may wish to do one activity on successive days. You may also choose to do an activity with the whole class or with a small group of students who would benefit from the particular activity.

Core Content Objectives Up to This Pausing Point

Students will:

✓ Locate the area known as Mesopotamia on a world map or globe and identify it as a part of Asia
✓ Explain the importance of the Tigris and Euphrates rivers and canals to support farming and the development of the city of Babylon
✓ Describe the city of Babylon and the Hanging Gardens
✓ Identify cuneiform as the system of writing in Mesopotamia
✓ Explain why a written language is important to the development of a civilization
✓ Explain the significance of the Code of Hammurabi
✓ Explain why rules and laws are important to the development of a civilization
✓ Explain the ways in which a leader is important to the development of a civilization
✓ Explain the significance of gods/goddesses, ziggurats, temples, and priests in Mesopotamia
✓ Describe key components of a civilization
✓ Identify Mesopotamia as the “Cradle of Civilization”
✓ Describe how a civilization evolves and changes over time

Student Performance Task Assessment

10 Civilizations Chart (Instructional Master PP1-1)

Give each student a copy of Instructional Master PP1-1, and have them draw pictures and/or write statements about each of the five components of a civilization: farming, leaders and laws, writing, religion, and cities, as they pertain to the civilization of Mesopotamia.

Activities

Where Are We?

Materials: World map or globe

Help students locate and identify the area known as the Middle East. Ask them to identify the continent on which the Middle East is found. (Asia) Point to the present-day country of Iraq, and explain that this is one of the countries in the Middle East. Explain that in ancient times, this part of the Middle East was called Mesopotamia. Have students share connections between these places and the read-alouds.

Image Review

Show the Flip Book images from any read-aloud again, and have students retell the read-aloud using the images.

Image Card Review

Materials: Image Cards 1–6

In your hand, hold Image Cards 1–6 fanned out like a deck of cards. Ask a student to choose a card but not show it to anyone else in the class. The student must then perform an action or give a clue about the picture s/he is holding. The rest of the class will
guess what is being described. Proceed to another card when the correct answer has been given.

**Domain-Related Trade Book or Student Choice**

**Materials: Trade book**

Read a trade book to review what students have learned so far about Mesopotamia; refer to the books listed in the domain introduction. You may also choose to have the students select a read-aloud to be heard again.

**You Were There: Mesopotamia**

Have students pretend that they lived in ancient times in Mesopotamia. Ask students to describe what they would see and hear if they went to Babylon. Consider also extending this activity by adding group or independent writing opportunities associated with the “You Were There” concept. For example, ask students to pretend they are scribes recording the story of Nebuchadnezzar and his queen and write the story down as a group.

**Key Vocabulary Brainstorming**

**Materials: Chart paper, chalkboard, or whiteboard**

Give students a key domain concept or vocabulary word, such as *cradle of civilization*. Have them brainstorm everything that comes to mind when they hear the word, such as *baby, beginning of life, Mesopotamia, two rivers, first civilization*, etc. Record their responses on chart paper, a chalkboard, or a whiteboard for reference.

**Class Book: Mesopotamia**

**Materials: Drawing paper, drawing tools**

Tell the class or a group of students that they are going to make a class book to help them remember what they have learned thus far in this domain. Have the students brainstorm important information about Mesopotamia and what the components of Mesopotamian civilization were. Have each student choose one idea to draw a picture of, and then have him or her write a caption for the picture. Bind the pages to make a book to put in the class library for
students to read again and again. You may choose to add more pages upon completion of the entire domain before binding the book.

Trading Activity

**Materials: Drawing tools**

Tell students that they are going to pretend they are in a market in Mesopotamia and they have come to trade with others there. Hand out crayons or markers to each student. Divide the class into two groups. Have one group pretend to be the vendors at the market and remain seated, while the other students pretend to be the market attendees and roam around the classroom trading crayons or other drawing tools with the vendors. Have the students say, “Would you trade your crayon for this crayon?” Make sure that students use the word *trade* in their conversations with other students.

Venn Diagram

**Materials: Chart paper, chalkboard, or whiteboard; drawing tools**

In order to compare desert land to fertile land, draw two large overlapping circles to make a Venn diagram on chart paper, a chalkboard, or a whiteboard, and label them “Desert” and “Fertile.”

- **Show image 1A-1: The desert**
  
  Have students describe what they see in the picture. Record their observations on the diagram.

- **Show image 1A-8: Close-up of canals**
  
  Have students describe what they see in the picture. Record their observations on the diagram.

Have students describe the similarities and differences between the desert land and the fertile land. Remind students that the Euphrates River and the Tigris River made the land in Mesopotamia fertile. Farther away from the rivers there was desert land.
Then and Now

**Materials: Chart paper, chalkboard, or whiteboard**

In order to compare life in ancient Mesopotamia to life today, draw two large overlapping circles to make a Venn diagram on chart paper, a chalkboard, or a whiteboard, and label them “Then” and “Now.” Tell students they will be talking in pairs. Explain that each student will be given one minute to list as many ways as they can how life was different back then from the way life is today. Have each student turn to a neighbor and begin. When one minute is up, have the second student take a turn for one minute. Then encourage students to share their ideas and take dictation. First, ask students to identify the area of the Venn diagram where their ideas should be recorded. Then, tell the students they will now try to list as many ways that life back then was the same as it is today. Give students one minute for each turn, and then take dictation, asking them first to identify the area of the Venn diagram on which similarities go (i.e., the overlapping part).
Lesson Objectives

Core Content Objectives

Students will:

- Locate Egypt on a world map or globe and identify it as a part of Africa
- Explain the importance of the Nile River and how its floods were important for farming
- Describe key components of a civilization

Language Arts Objectives

The following language arts objectives are addressed in this lesson. Objectives aligning with the Common Core State Standards are noted with the corresponding standard in parentheses. Refer to the Alignment Chart for additional standards addressed in all lessons in this domain.

Students will:

- Use the setting of “People of the Nile” to write and draw a unique story with the same setting (RL.1.3)
- Describe the connection between the annual flooding of the Nile River and the ability of Egyptians to farm and settle in the area (RI.1.3)
- Describe an illustration of crops growing along the banks of the Nile River and use pictures and details in “People of the Nile” to describe the read-aloud’s key ideas (RI.1.7)
- Compare and contrast Mesopotamia and ancient Egypt (RI.1.9)
- With assistance, categorize and organize facts and information from “People of the Nile,” to answer questions (W.1.8)
- Add drawings to descriptions of the Nile River, the setting of “People of the Nile,” to clarify ideas and thoughts (SL.1.5)
Prior to listening to “People of the Nile,” make predictions orally about whether life in ancient Egypt was similar to, or different from, life in Mesopotamia, and then compare the actual outcomes to predictions.

Share writing with others

**Core Vocabulary**

- **advantage, n.** A skill or thing that increases one’s chances of success
  
  *Example:* The children’s small size gave them an advantage when playing hide and seek because they could hide in small spaces.
  
  *Variation(s):* advantages

- **Egyptians, n.** People from or living in Egypt
  
  *Example:* Cleopatra and King Tut were Egyptians.
  
  *Variation(s):* Egyptian

- **enriched, v.** Added to or made richer
  
  *Example:* Her mother bought milk that was enriched with vitamin D.
  
  *Variation(s):* enrich, enriches, enriching

- **flooding, n.** Water covering an area that is usually dry
  
  *Example:* Sometimes when it rains very hard for a very long time, flooding takes place.
  
  *Variation(s):* none

### At a Glance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exercise</th>
<th>Materials</th>
<th>Minutes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Introducing the Read-Aloud</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where Are We?</td>
<td>world map or globe</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Making Predictions About the Read-Aloud</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purpose for Listening</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Presenting the Read-Aloud</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>People of the Nile</td>
<td></td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Discussing the Read-Aloud</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comprehension Questions</td>
<td>world map or globe</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Word Work: Flooding</td>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Extensions**

- **Civilizations Chart**
- **Setting**
- **Image Card 7**
- **drawing paper, drawing tools**

**Take-Home Material**

- **Family Letter**
- **Instructional Master 5B-1**

© 2013 Core Knowledge Foundation
Introducing the Read-Aloud

Where Are We?

Ask students to locate the continent of Africa on a world map or globe. Point to Egypt and explain that Egypt is a country in the northeast corner of Africa.

Show image 5A-1: The desert

Review with students what a desert is. Explain that much of Egypt, like Mesopotamia, is a desert. The desert in Egypt is called the Sahara Desert. Have students repeat Sahara Desert after you.

Ask students which two rivers were very important to the Mesopotamians and why those rivers were so important. (Tigris and Euphrates; allowed them to farm in the desert) Tell students that today they will learn about life in ancient Egypt and an important river called the Nile River. The Nile is the longest river in the world, and it flows through Egypt. Show students the Nile River on a map or globe.

Ask students if they have heard of Egypt, the Nile River, or the Sahara Desert. Give students the opportunity to share any prior knowledge they have about the region.

Making Predictions About the Read-Aloud

Tell students that at about the same time people were living in Mesopotamia, people were also living in Egypt. Tell students that the next several read-alouds will be about life in ancient Egypt several thousands of years ago. Explain to them that part of the read-aloud is factual information about the Egyptians, and the other part is a made-up story with characters. Ask students if they think life in ancient Egypt was the same as or different from life in Mesopotamia.
Purpose for Listening

Tell students to listen carefully to learn about life in ancient Egypt, and to find out whether or not their predictions were correct about ancient Egypt being the same as or different from Mesopotamia. Also tell them that Egypt has been called “the gift of the Nile,” and they should listen carefully to learn why.
While people were creating cities and nations in Mesopotamia, another group of people, the Egyptians, were building another great civilization on the banks of another river, the Nile.  

The Nile River is the longest—and one of the mightiest—rivers on the earth. After it flows all the way through Egypt, it empties into the sea. The Nile has always given the people of Egypt a special advantage.  

Most farmers outside of Egypt had a hard time growing crops. They often had to farm the same land year after year. The problem with this was that by using the same land every year, the crops they planted would use up the natural vitamins and minerals in that land. After the vitamins and minerals were used up, the farmers could no longer grow crops on that land.  

So, the farmers would have to stop farming and give the land a few years to “rest.” By not growing crops on that land for a few years, the natural vitamins and minerals the plants needed to grow would start to build up again. Then the farmers could farm on that land again, at least for a few more years.  

Because the farmers could only grow their crops on the same land for a few years before the natural vitamins and minerals would be used up, they could not count on being able to grow enough food every single year. It was a very hard life.  

But, the Egyptians could farm the same land over and over again. Do you know why? The reason they could had to do with the Nile.
The Nile begins its long journey to the sea in the high mountains of central Africa. Every spring, heavy rainstorms fill Africa's mountain lakes, emptying water into the Nile. Rushing down the mountainsides with enormous speed and power, the swollen river carries mud, rich with minerals and vitamins, in its current. When the floodwaters reach the flat lands of Egypt, they spread out for miles on either side of the riverbanks. When the rains and the flooding stop, the river goes back to its usual size.

Long, long ago the ancient Egyptians planted crops in the muddy fields that were enriched with vitamins and minerals. In this way, the Nile floods meant life for the Egyptians. But if the rains were light for a year or two, the floodwaters would not bring enough rich soil (with vitamins and minerals for the plants), and the people might go hungry because they would not be able to grow as much food.

The Egyptians knew their lives depended on the river. Most Egyptians lived within twelve or thirteen miles of the Nile on one side or the other, for it was there that the floodwaters refreshed the land each year.

The floodwaters could also be very dangerous. When the spring floods came, the Nile could destroy homes and villages if they were built too close to the river. So, many ancient Egyptian villages were built up above the level of the river so that when the spring floods came, the river would not destroy the buildings and homes.

Some villages, though, were built on the same level as the river itself. Every year the people living there would have to leave their village when the water rose too high. They moved away to a safer place and then would return a few weeks later after the river had returned to a lower level. The ancient Egyptians in those villages would have to repair a lot of the damage. Still, they did that every single year.
Some villages had another way of dealing with the flood waters. The people living in these villages dug canals, ditches cut into the earth that spread from the edge of the river to carry away the extra water from the spring floods. The water flowed through the canals, past the village, and into the farm fields beyond. So the village did not get damaged, and the water could be transported out farther from the Nile.

But the Egyptians used the Nile for other reasons, as we shall see in this story of an ancient Egyptian family.

One day thousands of years ago, an Egyptian woman named Ipi (IP-pea) and her daughter Meret (MER-et) went down to the Nile to gather some soft, muddy clay so they could make clay pots. Approaching the river, they heard a voice call, “Ipi! Meret!” They looked up and smiled, for sailing out in the middle of the Nile was Rensi (REN-see), the husband of Ipi and the father of Meret. Rensi was a fisherman who sailed his narrow boat up and down the river, casting out rope nets to catch fish. Rensi did this just as the men in his family had always done before him. As Rensi’s mother had told him, “Once a fisherman, always a fisherman; and once a fisherman’s son, always a fisherman, too.”

Rensi began making his way back to Meret and Ipi, and after a few minutes, he reached shore. Pulling his boat a little way onto the sand so that it would not drift back into the water, he made his way over to them.

Meret turned to her father, who hugged her and kissed her. “Little fish,” he said gently, using one of his nicknames for Meret.

The three of them took the rope fishing nets from the boat and hung them to dry on wooden racks in the sun. Then Rensi, his wife, and his daughter took the fish from the boat back to their
village, where they would sell them at the market. That night, exhausted from a day at the market, they made their way back to their little house made of mud bricks at the edge of the village.

**Discussing the Read-Aloud** 15 minutes

**Comprehension Questions** 10 minutes

If students have difficulty responding to questions, reread pertinent passages of the read-aloud and/or refer to specific images. If students give one-word answers and/or fail to use read-aloud or domain vocabulary in their responses, acknowledge correct responses by expanding the students’ responses using richer and more complex language. Ask students to answer in complete sentences by having them restate the question in their responses.

1. **Evaluative** Were your predictions about whether life in ancient Egypt was the same as or different from life in Mesopotamia correct? Why or why not? (Answers may vary.)

2. **Literal** [Have a student locate the country of Egypt on a world map or globe.] On what continent is Egypt located? (Africa)

3. **Inferential** Why is Egypt often called “the gift of the Nile”? (It is because of the Nile River, and what it allowed the Egyptians to do, that ancient Egypt was able to be established as a civilization.)

4. **Inferential** How was the flooding of the Nile, which happened during heavy spring rains, important for farming? (It enriched the soil with vitamins and minerals.)

5. **Inferential** Why did most people in ancient Egypt live near the Nile? (They needed to grow their own food, and the river made farming possible.)

6. **Inferential** Within the read-aloud you heard a made-up story about an Egyptian family. Summarize what happens in the story. (Ipi and Meret go down to the river and see Rensi sailing and fishing. Rensi sails back to shore and the three of them clean up the boat and put it away. Then they walk back to their house.)
7. **Inferential** How was the Nile important to Meret and her family? (They used the clay to make pots, they fished in the river, and they traveled on it.)

8. **Evaluative** How were Mesopotamia and ancient Egypt the same? (They both were located near rivers; people lived in both places; both had canals; etc.)

9. **Evaluative** How were they different? (They were on different continents; the rivers had different names; etc.)

[Please continue to model the *Think Pair Share* process for students, as necessary, and scaffold students in their use of the process.]

I am going to ask a question. I will give you a minute to think about the question, and then I will ask you to turn to your neighbor and discuss the question. Finally, I will call on several of you to share what you discussed with your partner.

10. **Evaluative** *Think Pair Share*: Could ancient Egypt have existed without the Nile River? Why or why not? (Answers may vary.)

11. After hearing today’s read-aloud and questions and answers, do you have any remaining questions? [If time permits, you may wish to allow for individual, group, or class research of the text and/or other resources to answer these questions.]

**Word Work: Flooding**  

5 minutes

1. In the read-aloud you heard, “When the rains and the *flooding* stop, the river goes back to its usual size.”

2. Say the word *flooding* with me.

3. *Flooding* means covering with too much water an area of land that is normally dry.

4. I heard on the news that there was flooding near the Mississippi River.

5. Have you ever seen or heard about flooding? Try to use the word *flooding* when you tell about it. [Ask two or three students. If necessary, guide and/or rephrase the students’ responses: “I saw flooding . . . ”]

6. What’s the word we’ve been talking about?
Use a *Making Choices* activity for follow-up. Directions: The read-aloud explained that flooding was helpful to the ancient Egyptians because it enriched the soil. Flooding can also be harmful because too much water can damage plants, animals, and homes. I am going to read some sentences. If the sentence describes a way that flooding can be helpful, you will say, “Flooding can be helpful.” If the sentence describes a way that flooding can be harmful, you will say, “Flooding can be harmful.”

1. The flooding provided rich soil for planting crops. (Flooding can be helpful.)

2. The people living near the river had to leave their homes as the flooding came closer and closer. (Flooding can be harmful.)

3. The flooding left clay that was used to make clay pots. (Flooding can be helpful.)

4. The birds flew away because of the flooding of their habitat. (Flooding can be harmful.)

5. The flooding destroyed the corn crop. (Flooding can be harmful.)

Complete Remainder of the Lesson Later in the Day
 Extensions  20 minutes

Civilizations Chart

Show students Image Card 7 (Farming Along the Nile). Talk about the Image Card and have students share what they learned from the read-aloud about farming along the Nile. Ask students how this is similar to Mesopotamia. (They both farmed near the river.) Ask students how this is different from Mesopotamia. (The ancient Egyptians farmed near the Nile, while the people of Mesopotamia farmed on the banks of the Euphrates and Tigris rivers.) Tell the students that you are going to place the Image Card in the Farming column on the chart to help them remember that people in ancient Egypt farmed near the Nile.

Setting

Ask students if they remember what the setting of a story is. (where and when it takes place) Ask students to identify and describe the setting of the story about Meret and her family. (near the Nile River, thousands of year ago)

Ask students what other kinds of stories might be written with the same setting. (going fishing on the Nile; taking a trip down the Nile in a boat; etc.) After brainstorming ideas, tell students that they are going to draw a picture of one of the ideas. Then they will write about the picture that has been drawn. Some students may need to dictate to an adult what will be written. Others may write a word or two, one complete sentence, or several sentences with a beginning, middle, and end. Give students the opportunity to share their drawings and writing.

Take-Home Material

Family Letter

Send home Instructional Master 5B-1.
Lesson Objectives

Core Content Objectives

✓ Locate Egypt on a world map or globe and identify it as a part of Africa
✓ Identify hieroglyphs as the system of writing used in ancient Egypt
✓ Explain why a written language is important to the development of a civilization
✓ Describe key components of civilization

Language Arts Objectives

The following language arts objectives are addressed in this lesson. Objectives aligning with the Common Core State Standards are noted with the corresponding standard in parentheses. Refer to the Alignment Chart for additional standards addressed in all lessons in this domain.

Students will:

✓ Describe the connection between a written language and the ability to accurately record information (RI.1.3)

✓ Describe an illustration of hieroglyphs and use pictures and details in “Writing in Ancient Egypt” to describe the read-aloud’s key ideas (RI.1.7)

✓ Compare and contrast writing in Mesopotamia with writing in ancient Egypt (RI.1.9)

✓ Make personal connections between the role of writing in their lives with writing in ancient Egypt (W.1.8)

✓ With assistance, categorize and organize facts and information from “Writing in Ancient Egypt” to answer questions (W.1.8)
✓ Ask questions to clarify directions for an activity in which they are to decode hieroglyphs (SL.1.3)

✓ Prior to listening to “Writing in Ancient Egypt,” identify orally what they know and have learned about the Nile River and ancient Egypt

**Core Vocabulary**

*accurately, adv.* Without errors or mistakes

- *Example:* She accurately answered each homework question and received a “Well Done!” sticker.
- *Variation(s):* none

*hieroglyphs, n.* Pictures that represent sounds, letters, or words

- *Example:* The hieroglyphs carved in the stone told a story about the flood.
- *Variation(s):* hieroglyph

---

**At a Glance**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exercise</th>
<th>Materials</th>
<th>Minutes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Introducing the Read-Aloud</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where Are We?</td>
<td>world map or globe</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Personal Connections</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What Have We Already Learned?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purpose for Listening</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Presenting the Read-Aloud</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Writing in Ancient Egypt</td>
<td></td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Discussing the Read-Aloud</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comprehension Questions</td>
<td>world map or globe</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Word Work: Accurately</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Extensions</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Civilizations Chart</td>
<td>Image Cards 8, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drawing the Read-Aloud</td>
<td>Instructional Master 6B-1; drawing paper, drawing tools; chart paper, chalkboard, or whiteboard</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Where Are We?
Choose a different student each day to locate Egypt on a world map or globe and identify it as a part of Africa.

Personal Connections

Show image 2A-2: Cuneiform
Discuss the significance of writing, using the following questions and the image as a guide:

- What is the name for the ancient Mesopotamian writing in the image? (cuneiform)
- Is it important to write things down? Why or why not?
- What kinds of things do you write?
- How would your lives be different if there were no writing?

What Have We Already Learned?

Show image 5A-6: Meret on the banks of the Nile
Remind students that in the previous lesson they learned about Meret and her family in ancient Egypt. Have a student point out Meret in the picture. Have students repeat the name Meret after you. Ask, “Besides farming, what else was the Nile used for?” (fishing; transportation) Now have students describe the setting in the previous story about Meret and her family. (a village near the Nile River)
Purpose for Listening

Tell students that the next read-aloud is about writing in ancient Egypt. Remind them that they learned about cuneiform writing in the read-alouds about Mesopotamia. Explain that this story continues with the life of the character Meret, and that even though this is a made-up story, there are real facts in it about Egyptian writing long ago. Tell them to listen carefully to find out whether Egyptian writing was like Mesopotamian writing.
Once in a while, Meret accompanied her father while he went fishing. Late one night, Meret and her father returned from a long day of fishing on the Nile River. They were both exhausted from being out in the hot sun all afternoon and relieved to be back on the banks of the river. Meret’s mother was waiting for them along the shore. When she saw Meret, she scooped the tired girl up and gave her a huge hug.

“I will sing you your bedtime song as we walk home, my child,” she told Meret. Meret nodded, wearily looking up at her mother.

When her mother finished singing the beautiful song, Meret asked curiously, “Mother, how did you learn that song?”

“I learned it from my mother, who learned it from her mother,” Meret’s mother replied. “I learned everything I needed to know by listening to my mother. I will teach you everything you need to know, and I hope that you will be able to listen well.”

“I will,” Meret answered. “But isn’t there another way to pass on information?”

“Well, yes,” Meret’s mother answered. “The kings and scribes know how to draw symbols called **hieroglyphs** that represent the words we say. Then, someone else can come along and read these symbols much later and understand exactly what was written.”

“But why would we need to write things down, when we can just pass them on by talking?” Meret inquired.
“Sometimes messages need to be carried by messengers over very long distances,” Meret’s mother explained, “and in the time it took to travel great distances, the messengers sometimes forgot the messages, or got some of the words mixed up when they tried to repeat them.”

“That is not so good!” Meret exclaimed. “Then the person could get the wrong message!”

“Exactly,” Meret’s mother continued. “However, when the message is written down, there is no chance that the messenger will forget the message or get it mixed up. This is one reason why reading and writing are so important. We Egyptians decided it was important to write things down accurately.”

“That seems like a good idea.” Meret agreed. “So writing things down using symbols helps messengers deliver the correct message, but are there other things that writing is used for?”

“Many things,” Meret’s mother said. “Writing is used so that the important things that happen will be remembered for a long, long time. It is how we can look back and remember things that happened before you and I were even alive!”

“Wow!” Meret said in amazement.

Her mother continued, “So we write to record our history, but we also use it to write down laws that everyone should follow. We use these symbols to write down stories, poems, and even songs.”

“Like the beautiful song you always sing to me, Mother?” Meret inquired.

“Yes, the song I sing to you every night has been written down so that it will be remembered forever,” Meret’s mother answered, smiling.
“That is good,” Meret said. “I like that song.” She paused and then asked, “So the carvings on the stones of the temple are a form of writing?”

“Yes,” her mother replied. “People also paint or write on wood or papyrus. The messengers I told you about earlier normally take messages written on papyrus.”

“Well I imagine that a stone would be quite heavy to carry!” Meret laughed.

Meret’s mother laughed as well and then said, “But now, my dear, it is time for you to sleep. We are finally home.”

“Will you sing me the song one more time?” Meret asked as they went inside.

Meret’s mother nodded and then began singing. Before she was even done, Meret was fast asleep.

Meret’s favorite song had been written down using hieroglyphics, the ancient Egyptian way of writing. In ancient Egypt, kings, scribes, priests, and craftsmen were some of the few people who understood the meanings of the symbols. These hieroglyphs, or single pictures and symbols, were used instead of the letters and words we have in our language to communicate and write down important messages, laws, songs, stories, and prayers so that they would be remembered for many years to come. It wasn’t until hundreds of years later that the word hieroglyphics was given to this form of writing.

Papyrus is a plant that the Egyptians used to make paper by cutting the inside of the stalk into thin strips, making them wet, pressing them together, and leaving the papyrus to dry. This forms a smooth writing surface.

[Have students repeat the word hieroglyphics. You may wish to turn back to image 6A-4 as you read the rest of the paragraph.] Even though Meret is a character in a made-up story, hieroglyphics were real in Ancient Egypt.

The word form here means a type of something. The word form can also mean to make or create.
Discussing the Read-Aloud

Comprehension Questions

1. **Literal** [Have a student locate Egypt on a world map or globe.]
   On what continent is Egypt located? (Africa)

2. **Literal** What is the name of the ancient Egyptian system of writing? (hieroglyphics; individual characters are called hieroglyphs)

3. **Inferential** Describe the hieroglyphs. (pictures that represented words)

4. **Literal** Where did the ancient Egyptians write hieroglyphs? (on papyrus, wood, and stone)

5. **Inferential** What kinds of things did the ancient Egyptians write down? (songs, laws, messages, stories, etc.)

6. **Inferential** Why was it important to the ancient Egyptians to write things down? (to have accurate records of what had happened)

[Please continue to model the *Think Pair Share* process for students, as necessary, and scaffold students in their use of the process.]

I am going to ask a question. I will give you a minute to think about the question, and then I will ask you to turn to your neighbor and discuss the question. Finally, I will call on several of you to share what you discussed with your partner.

6. **Evaluative** *Think Pair Share*: How are hieroglyphs different from cuneiform? How are hieroglyphs the same as cuneiform? (Answers may vary.)

7. After hearing today’s read-aloud and questions and answers, do you have any remaining questions? [If time permits, you may wish to allow for individual, group, or class research of the text and/or other resources to answer these questions.]
Word Work: Accurately

1. In the read-aloud you heard, “We Egyptians decided it was important to write things down accurately.”

2. Say the word accurately with me.

3. Accurately means correctly and without errors or mistakes.

4. I always check my writing to make sure that I spelled my words accurately.

5. What kinds of things can you check to make sure that you did them accurately? Try to use the word accurately when you tell about it. [Ask two or three students. If necessary, guide and/or rephrase the students’ responses: “I check my _____ to make sure that I did it accurately.”]

6. What’s the word we’ve been talking about?

Use a Telephone activity for follow-up. Directions: I will whisper a statement or message in one of your ears, and that person will pass on that message to the next student by whispering it in his or her ear. We will continue doing this until every student has heard this message. When we get to the last student, I will ask him or her to tell the class the message. [Have the class discuss the end result and whether or not the statement was passed on accurately. Have students use the word accurately in their discussion.]

[Remind students that the read-aloud explained how it was important to the ancient Egyptians to write things down accurately. Continue by playing another game of telephone, but this time, write a simple decodable statement/message on a piece of paper. Have each student read the statement on the paper quietly and pass it to the next student until each has had a turn. Ask the last student to tell the class the message. Discuss how writing helps deliver a message accurately. Have students use the word accurately in their discussion.]

Complete Remainder of the Lesson Later in the Day
Civilizations Chart

Show students Image Card 8 (City in Ancient Egypt). Talk about the Image Card and how people settled along the Nile, just like Meret and her family. Ask students how this is similar to Mesopotamia. (They both had cities near rivers.) Tell students that you are going to place the Image Card in the Cities column on the Civilizations Chart to help them remember that there were cities in ancient Egypt.

Show students Image Card 9 (Hieroglyphs). Talk about the Image Card, and have students share what they learned from the read-aloud about hieroglyphs and writing in ancient Egypt. Ask students how this is similar to Mesopotamia. (They both had a way of writing.) Ask students how this is different from Mesopotamia. (Cuneiform and hieroglyphs are different.) Tell students that you are going to place the Image Card in the Writing column on the Civilizations Chart to help them remember that the ancient Egyptians had a way of writing.

Drawing the Read-Aloud (Instructional Master 6B-1)

Give each student a copy of Instructional Master 6B-1 and a piece of drawing paper.

Give students the opportunity to talk about the various hieroglyphs on the Instructional Master. On the board, write a decodable word in hieroglyphs, and show students how to use the Instructional Master to decode the word.

Ask students to write their names, or a decodable word that can be spelled correctly, using the hieroglyphs. Words associated with ancient Egypt would be an excellent choice.
Say, “Asking questions is one way to make sure that everyone knows what to do. Think of a question you can ask your neighbor about the directions I have just given you. For example, you could ask, ‘What should we do first?’ Turn to your neighbor and ask your own question now. I will call on several of you to share your questions with the class.”
Lesson Objectives

Core Content Objectives

Students will:

✓ Locate Egypt on a world map or globe and identify it as a part of Africa

✓ Explain the significance of gods/goddesses in ancient Egypt

Language Arts Objectives

The following language arts objectives are addressed in this lesson. Objectives aligning with the Common Core State Standards are noted with the corresponding standard in parentheses. Refer to the Alignment Chart for additional standards addressed in all lessons in this domain.

Students will:

✓ Describe the connection between Egyptian beliefs and their gods and goddesses (RI.1.3)

✓ Describe an illustration of Egyptian gods and use pictures and details in “Amon-Ra and the Gods of Ancient Egypt” to describe the read-aloud’s key ideas (RI.1.7)

✓ Compare and contrast gods/goddesses in ancient Egypt with those in Mesopotamia (RI.1.9)

✓ With assistance, categorize and organize facts and information from “Amon-Ra and the Gods of Ancient Egypt” to answer questions (W.1.8)

✓ Ask and answer what questions orally, requiring literal recall and understanding of the details or facts of “Amon-Ra and the Gods of Ancient Egypt” (SL.1.2)
Prior to listening to “Amon-Ra and the Gods of Ancient Egypt,” identify orally what they know and have learned about ancient Egypt and about the religious beliefs of Mesopotamians.

Share writing with others.

**Core Vocabulary**

**blossom, n.** The flower on a plant or tree

*Example:* Benjamin picked a beautiful cherry blossom off the cherry tree.

*Variation(s):* blossoms

**depicted, v.** Represented in words or a picture

*Example:* Her painting depicted a sunny day at the ocean.

*Variation(s):* depict, depicts, depicting

**lotus, n.** An aquatic plant with pink flowers

*Example:* As they rowed down the river, they passed a lotus.

*Variation(s):* lotuses

---

### At a Glance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exercise</th>
<th>Materials</th>
<th>Minutes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Introducing the Read-Aloud</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where Are We?</td>
<td>world map or globe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What Have We Already Learned?</td>
<td>Image Cards 7–9; Civilization Chart from previous lessons</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purpose for Listening</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Presenting the Read-Aloud</strong></td>
<td>Amon-Ra and the Gods of Ancient Egypt</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Discussing the Read-Aloud</strong></td>
<td>Comprehension Questions</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Word Work: Depicted</td>
<td>drawing paper, drawing tools</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Extensions</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Civilizations Chart</td>
<td>Image Card 10</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocabulary Instructional Activity: Specific</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Amon-Ra and the Gods of Ancient Egypt

Introducing the Read-Aloud

Where Are We?

Choose a different student each day to locate Egypt on a world map or globe and identify it as part of Africa.

What Have We Already Learned?

Divide the class into three groups. Give each group one of the Image Cards used for ancient Egypt from the chart: Image Card 7 (Farming Along the Nile), Image Card 8 (City in Ancient Egypt), and Image Card 9 (Hieroglyphs). Tell students that you will give them a few minutes in their groups to talk about the Image Card and what they have learned about the ancient Egyptian civilization. Then, the class will come back together and each group will have a few minutes to share with the class.

Ask students what they remember about farming, cities, and writing in Mesopotamia. You may wish to refer to the Civilizations Chart to help students remember.

Finally, ask students what they remember about religion in Mesopotamia, again referring to the Civilizations Chart to help students remember. Review with students that the religion of Mesopotamia was polytheistic. Ask if they recall what the word polytheistic—means, and remind them the Mesopotamians believed there were many gods and goddesses.

Show image 6A-1: Meret and her father returning

Remind students that in the previous lessons, they learned about Meret and her family in ancient Egypt. Have a student point out Meret in the picture. Have them repeat the name Meret after you. Tell students that today they will continue with the story of Meret and her mother in ancient Egypt. Today we will hear about their religion, or belief system.
Purpose for Listening

Have students listen carefully to find out what the ancient Egyptian gods looked like and what kinds of things they did.
Amon-Ra and the Gods of Ancient Egypt

The old stories from Egypt said that some of the gods and goddesses looked like specific animals the Egyptians saw around them in their own country, or a mixture of animals and human beings. For example, one common Egyptian bird was a small hawk called a falcon. The ancient Egyptians believed in a god named Horus (HAWR-us), who was depicted as a man’s body topped with the head of a falcon.

Another of their gods, Sobek (SO-beck) was depicted with a human body but the head of a crocodile! There have always been real crocodiles living along the banks of the Nile River, and they are always hungry. They often try to catch and eat other animals. In the old days, people believed in Sobek, the god with a crocodile’s head, so they could pray to him to keep real crocodiles away. The Egyptians were careful to say nice things about him. “See,” they would say, “we made a handsome statue of you, great Sobek, and we will leave meat and fish in front of the statue for you to eat.”

Another Egyptian god was depicted as a cat, another as a hippopotamus, and so on. Others looked completely human but were still thought to have special powers.

The ancient Egyptians’ most important god had different names in different parts of Egypt. Some people called him Amon (AH-mahn). Some called him Ra (RAH). Sometimes they put these together as Amon-Ra. These were all names for the Egyptian god of the sun, whom they said created everything, including many of the other gods and goddesses.

You have just heard some real ideas the Ancient Egyptians had when it came to their religious beliefs.
Let’s listen as Meret’s mother tells her a story about Amon-Ra, the Egyptian god of the sun, and what the ancient Egyptians believed about the creation of the world.

**Show image 7A-3: Meret and her mother washing clothes**

Meret and her mother were washing clothes down at the edge of the Nile. Meret’s mother said, “Amon-Ra started out by living inside a large, beautiful flower called a **lotus**. In those days, everything was covered with water, and the lotus flower was under the waves. Finally Amon-Ra thought, ‘It is time for this lotus to rise up out of the water and open its petals.’ And because he was powerful, it happened.”

“That is amazing!” Meret said. She turned to set some wet clothes on a large rock so the sun would dry them.

**Show image 7A-4: Amon-Ra with sun in boat sailing across sky**

Her mother replied, “You have not yet heard the most wonderful part! After the lotus **blossom** opened, Amon-Ra said, ‘Now I will make everything else in the world, just by thinking about each thing and using my powers. I will think up other powerful gods and goddesses so I won’t be lonely. I will make stars and planets, the sun and the moon, and the birds, fish, plants, and animals. And I will make the first human beings, too.’ After he made everything, Amon-Ra picked up the sun and put it into a big boat.”

“The whole sun?” asked Meret.

“Yes. Amon-Ra is very strong. He sailed his boat with the sun in it across the whole sky until he reached the other side. Then he rested and did it again the next day. He still does this every day, and when he rests it is night.”

**Show image 7A-5: Meret and her mother washing clothes**

Meret thought this over and asked, “Why can’t we see him or his boat?”

“Maybe he and the boat are too far away, up in the air. We can only see the bright sun shining from the back. Or perhaps the sun
is so bright we cannot look carefully enough to see the boat. After all, you must not stare at the sun. That will hurt your eyes.”

Meret said, “Well, I am glad Amon-Ra made the sun, or we could not dry our laundry.” And Meret’s mother laughed.

**Discussing the Read-Aloud**

**Comprehension Questions**

1. **Inferential** Describe the gods/goddesses of ancient Egypt. (Most were depicted as animals or part-animal.)

2. **Inferential** What did the ancient Egyptians believe the gods and goddesses did? (took care of people; created parts of the world; etc.)

3. **Literal** Who was Amon-Ra? (Many ancient Egyptians believed that he was the god of the sun, the god who created the world.)

4. **Inferential** What did Meret’s mother’s story about Amon-Ra explain? (that she believed Amon-Ra created the world, and was the reason for the rising and setting of the sun)

5. **Inferential** Summarize the myth you just heard about Amon-Ra’s creation of the world. (In the beginning of the myth, Amon-Ra lived inside a lotus flower which was under water. He made it rise up out of the water and blossom. Then he made everything else in the world from his imagination, including the first human beings. Next, he put the sun into a boat and sailed it across the whole sky and then he rested.)

6. **Evaluative** How were the gods and goddesses of ancient Egypt the same or different from the gods/goddesses of Mesopotamia? (There were many gods and goddesses for different things in both Mesopotamia and ancient Egypt. The gods and goddesses of Mesopotamia and ancient Egypt looked different from each other.)

[Please continue to model the Question? Pair Share process for students, as necessary, and scaffold students in their use of the process.]
7. **What? Pair Share:** Asking questions after a read-aloud is one way to see how much everyone has learned. Think of a question you can ask your neighbor about the read-aloud that starts with the word *what*. For example, you could ask, “What did you learn about in today’s read-aloud?” Turn to your neighbor and ask your *what* question. Listen to your neighbor’s response. Then your neighbor will ask a new *what* question, and you will get a chance to respond. I will call on several of you to share your questions with the class.

8. After hearing today’s read-aloud and questions and answers, do you have any remaining questions? [If time permits, you may wish to allow for individual, group, or class research of the text and/or other resources to answer these questions.]

**Word Work: Depicted**

1. In the read-aloud you heard, “Sobek was *depicted* as having a human body but the head of a crocodile.”

2. Say the word *depicted* with me.

3. When something is depicted, it is represented or shown in pictures or words.

4. By drawing all of the different equipment, and making it bright and sunny, Sammy depicted the playground in his picture as a fun place.

5. How have you depicted your favorite places? Try to use the word *depicted* when you tell about it. [Ask two or three students. If necessary guide and/or rephrase the students’ responses: “I depicted my grandmother’s house using crayons.”]

6. What’s the word we’ve been talking about?

Use a *Drawing* activity for follow-up. Directions: Draw a picture that depicts a place that you enjoy. [Have students share their pictures with a partner, using the word *depicted* when they talk about it.]

Complete Remainder of the Lesson Later in the Day
Civilizations Chart

Show students Image Card 10 (Egyptian Gods). Ask students to identify what they see, talk about the Image Card, and share what they learned from the read-aloud about gods and goddesses in ancient Egypt. Tell students that you are going to place the Image Card on the Civilizations Chart to help them remember that the ancient Egyptians had a polytheistic religion.

Vocabulary Instructional Activity

Word Work: Specific

1. In today’s read-aloud you heard, “The old stories from Egypt said that some of the gods and goddesses looked like specific animals the Egyptians saw around them in their own country, or a mixture of animals and human beings.”

2. Say the word specific with me.

3. Specific means an example of a certain kind of thing.

4. An apple is a specific type of fruit.

5. You heard about some specific types of animals on which the Egyptians based their gods and goddesses. Can you think of some other specific types of animals? Try to use the word specific when you tell about it. [Ask two or three students. If necessary, guide and/or rephrase the students’ responses: “A is a specific type of animal.”]

6. What’s the word we’ve been talking about?
Use an Antonyms activity for follow-up. Directions: The opposite of specific is general. For example, the word cat is specific, but the word animal is general. I am going to give you several pairs of words, and I would like for you to tell me which of the words is specific and which of the words is general.

1. color and green (color is general and green is specific)
2. milk and drink (milk is specific and drink is general)
3. three and number (three is specific and number is general)
4. girl and Maria (girl is general and Maria is specific)
5. winter and season (winter is specific and season is general)
Lesson Objectives

Core Content Objectives

Students will:

✓ Locate Egypt on a world map or globe and identify it as a part of Africa

✓ Identify pyramids and explain their significance in ancient Egypt

✓ Describe how the pyramids were built

Language Arts Objectives

The following language arts objectives are addressed in this lesson. Objectives aligning with the Common Core State Standards are noted with the corresponding standard in parentheses. Refer to the Alignment Chart for additional standards addressed in all lessons in this domain.

Students will:

✓ Describe the connection between the Great Pyramid and Pharaoh Khufu (RI.1.3)

✓ Compare and contrast pyramids and ziggurats (RI.1.9)

✓ With assistance, categorize and organize facts and information from “Approaching the Great Pyramid” to answer questions (W.1.8)

✓ Identify new meanings for the word steps and apply them accurately

✓ Prior to listening to “Approaching the Great Pyramid,” identify orally what they know and have learned about the Nile River and religion in ancient Egypt

✓ Share writing with others
Core Vocabulary

afterlife, *n.* A life believed to begin after death
  
  *Example:* Many peoples and cultures believe in an afterlife.

  *Variation(s):* none

architect, *n.* Someone who designs buildings
  
  *Example:* My mother is the architect who designed the shopping mall.

  *Variation(s):* architects

journey, *n.* A trip
  
  *Example:* Their journey from home to their grandparents’ house took eight hours.

  *Variation(s):* journeys

pyramid, *n.* A structure with triangular sides
  
  *Example:* The family saw the Great Pyramid while on vacation in Egypt.

  *Variation(s):* pyramids

treasure, *n.* Something valuable or precious like gold or jewels
  
  *Example:* The pirates found treasure on the ship.

  *Variation(s):* treasures

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>At a Glance</th>
<th>Exercise</th>
<th>Materials</th>
<th>Minutes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Introducing the Read-Aloud</strong></td>
<td>Where Are We?</td>
<td>world map or globe</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What Have We Already Learned?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Purpose for Listening</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Presenting the Read-Aloud</strong></td>
<td>Approaching the Great Pyramid</td>
<td></td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Discussing the Read-Aloud</strong></td>
<td>Comprehension Questions</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Word Work: Treasure</td>
<td>drawing paper, drawing tools</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Extensions</strong></td>
<td>Pyramids and Ziggurats</td>
<td>Image Cards 5, 11</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Multiple Meaning Word Activity: Steps</td>
<td>Poster 4M (Steps)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Where Are We?

Choose a different student each day to locate Egypt on a world map or globe and identify it as part of Africa.

What Have We Already Learned?

Ask students to share what they have learned about the Nile River and why it was so important to the ancient Egyptians. Tell students that the Nile River was also important for transportation. The people used boats on the Nile to carry goods and people from place to place.

Then have students share what they have learned about religion in ancient Egypt. Remind students that the ancient Egyptians believed in many gods—a practice known as polytheism.

Purpose for Listening

Ask students what they remember about the ziggurats in Mesopotamia. Explain that in today’s read-aloud, they will learn about a building in ancient Egypt that was similar to the ziggurats of Mesopotamia. Tell them that the building was real a long time ago even though this read-aloud is a made-up story. Tell students that today’s read-aloud is about another father and daughter’s trip on the Nile. Tell students to listen carefully to find out why the father and daughter are taking the trip.
Long ago, there was an Egyptian priest named Setna (set-nuh). He was in charge of one part of a giant temple to the gods in his city. Setna had a daughter named Ahweru (ah-war-oo), whom he loved very much. \(^1\) When Ahweru was old enough, her father took her on a boat trip down the Nile to a place called Giza (gee-zah) so she could see the Great Pyramid there. \(^2\)

They journeyed \(^3\) for many days as passengers on a large sailing ship. During the voyage, Setna explained to his daughter what the Great Pyramid was and why it had been built. He said, “We Egyptians say that far to the west lies a place called ‘the beautiful west.’ When someone dies, he or she has the chance to travel there. If they arrive safely, their spirit will be happy forever, for the good god Osiris (o-sy-ris) is king there and takes good care of everyone. But the journey \(^4\) to this peaceful place is dangerous and hard to make, and not everyone who tries to get there reaches it. So we pray to Osiris and to his wife, Isis (eye-sis), and to their son, the falcon-headed god Horus. If they wish to do so, these three can help us reach the beautiful west with their powers, so we must make very sure that they like us.” \(^5\)

“The god Osiris will even let us bring any treasure we have with us when we go there: pretty artwork, fine clothes, jewelry, or whatever we most enjoy in this life so that we may have an enjoyable afterlife.” \(^6\)

“Well, many years ago, there was a pharaoh \(^7\) named Djoser (joe-sir). One night, Djoser dreamed that one of the gods told him to build a special place for Djoser’s family and servants to put his
body and treasures after he had died. Now, Djoser had a friend working for him who he thought was the smartest man alive in those days. This friend’s name was Imhotep (im-HO-tep). Imhotep was the greatest architect in Egypt.”

At this point, Setna’s daughter Ahweru interrupted. “Father, what is an ‘architect’?”

“An architect is a person who decides how a building should look and draws the plan the builders follow. Today in Egypt, our builders usually follow the same plans that Egyptian architects have used for thousands of years. But Imhotep was the one who first created many of those plans.”

“He must have been the best architect ever.”

“Pharaoh Djoser certainly thought so. He called Imhotep to the palace and told him about the dream. The pharaoh said, ‘Imhotep, build me a building that reaches up toward the sky in honor of the gods. Make the middle of it an open space for me, and for my treasures, for after I die. Make it special.’ So Imhotep built the first pyramid. The bottom of it is an enormous stone square, and then the four sides reach upward, leaning in toward one another until they meet at the top. The sides of that first pyramid are built as steps, making it easier to climb up the outside. Well, Djoser’s pyramid was so wonderful that the pharaohs after him wanted pyramids, too, but with smooth sides, not steps.

“Much later came another pharaoh named Khufu (KOO-foo). Pharaoh Khufu wanted people to know what an important pharaoh he was, so he commanded his people to build him the biggest pyramid of all: the Great Pyramid.”

Setna and his daughter Ahweru continued sailing for many days on their way to see the Great Pyramid at Giza and were nearing the end of their long journey along the Nile when suddenly, Setna pointed up ahead and said, “Look, my dear Ahweru! What do you see?”
Ahweru’s eyes opened wide with excitement. “Is that the top of the Great Pyramid, Father? Are we getting close?”

“It is the top, but we are still a long way from it. We will not be there until tomorrow. It will start getting dark soon, so we will be stopping shortly. But it is so tall that we can begin to see it even from this distance.”

The top of the pyramid shone brightly. “It is like the sun, Father!” Ahweru exclaimed.

“That is because the top is covered in gold that the pharaoh ordered to be brought from his mines in the desert, and the sides are covered in smooth, white stone. The pyramid shines in the sun.”

“The whole top is gold?”

“Yes. You see, Pharaoh Khufu wanted to show how powerful he was. He said, ‘I am the greatest ruler on earth, and the god of the sun, Amon-Ra, is the greatest of the gods, the one who created the world. My pyramid will shine in the sunlight to honor Amon-Ra and to remind everyone that, just as he created the world, I created this pyramid and am also great. I will be famous forever!’”

Setna looked again at that shining peak. “And all these years later, Ahweru, we are indeed standing here talking about Pharaoh Khufu.”

“But now it’s time for our boat to dock for the night. We will go into that town over there, get some dinner, then go to sleep. Because I am a priest at the temple of Karnak, we are invited to stay at the temple in this place. Come on, then. You will get to see the Great Pyramid up close tomorrow. It’s the most amazing building ever made!” And they stepped off their boat onto the wooden dock at the shore.
Discussing the Read-Aloud

Comprehension Questions

1. **Inferential** Why were Setna and Ahweru traveling on the Nile? (to see the Great Pyramid)

2. **Evaluative** How do you think Ahweru feels about seeing the Great Pyramid? Why? (Answers may vary.)

3. **Literal** What was the pyramid made of? (gold and stones)

4. **Inferential** Why was the Great Pyramid built? (as a burial place for Pharaoh Khufu)

5. **Literal** What else was placed in the pyramid besides the person’s body? (treasure)

6. **Inferential** Why was treasure also placed in the pyramid? (Egyptians believed the person would use these things in the next life or afterlife.)

7. **Inferential** How would you describe a pyramid to a friend? (Answers may vary but may include tall; square base; four triangular sides; etc.)

[Please continue to model the *Think Pair Share* process for students, as necessary, and scaffold students in their use of the process.]

I am going to ask a question. I will give you a minute to think about the question, and then I will ask you to turn to your neighbor and discuss the question. Finally, I will call on several of you to share what you discussed with your partner.

8. **Inferential** *Think Pair Share*: Why did Khufu command that such a large pyramid be built? (to be his burial place; to show his power; to hold lots of treasure; so that he is remembered; etc.)

9. After hearing today’s read-aloud and questions and answers, do you have any remaining questions? [If time permits, you may wish to allow for individual, group, or class research of the text and/or other resources to answer these questions.]
Word Work: Treasure

1. In the read-aloud you heard, “The god Osiris will even let us bring any treasure we have with us when we go there.”

2. Say the word treasure with me.

3. Treasure is gold, jewels, or other valuable things.

4. Columbus traveled across the ocean hoping to find treasure.

5. What things have you seen or heard about that you would consider treasure? Who might have treasure? Where might treasure be kept? Try to use the word treasure when you tell about it. [Ask two or three students. If necessary, guide and/or rephrase the students’ responses: “The treasure is kept in . . .”]

6. What’s the word we’ve been talking about?

Use a Drawing activity for follow-up. Directions: Pretend you will be given any treasure that you request. Draw a picture of the treasure that you would like to have and explain why in writing. [Some students may need to dictate to an adult what will be written. Others may write a word or two, one complete sentence, or several sentences. Give students the opportunity to share their drawings and writing with a partner or the class, making sure that they use the word treasure.]
Pyramids and Ziggurats

Show students Image Card 11 (Pyramid). Ask students to identify what they see, talk about the Image Card, and share what they learned from the read-aloud about pyramids in ancient Egypt. Show students Image Card 5 (Ziggurat). Ask students how pyramids are similar to the ziggurats of Mesopotamia. (The shape is similar.) Ask students how the pyramid is different from the ziggurat. (The pyramid was a burial place.)

Multiple Meaning Word Activity

Associated Phrase: Steps

1. [Show Poster 4M (Steps).] In the read-aloud you heard, “The sides of that first pyramid are built in steps, making it easier to climb up the outside.” [Have students hold up one, two, or three fingers to indicate which image on the poster shows this meaning.]

2. Steps can also mean something else. Steps also means the directions for how to do something. [Have students hold up one, two, or three fingers to indicate which image on the poster shows this meaning.]

3. Steps can also mean to move in a specific direction by lifting your foot and putting it down in another place. [Have students hold up one, two, or three fingers to indicate which image on the poster shows this meaning.]

4. [Point to the steps that are climbed on a staircase.] With your partner, talk about what you think of when you see these kind of steps. I will call on a few partners to share what they came up with. Try to answer in complete sentences. (When I see these kind of steps, I think of walking upstairs to my bedroom, the steps in front of the school, etc.)
5. [Point to the verb steps that demonstrates moving in a specific
direction by lifting your foot and putting it down in a different
place.] Now with your partner, talk about what you think of
when you see this kind of steps. I will call on a few partners
to share what they came up with. Try to answer in complete
sentences. (When I see this kind of steps, I think of how my
mother steps around the big tree in our yard, how my teacher
steps around the desks in our classroom, how my friend steps
carefully on the hot sand, etc.)

6. [Point to the steps that are the stages in a process of doing
something.] Now with your partner, talk about what you think
of when you see this kind of steps. I will call on a few partners
to share what they came up with. Try to answer in complete
sentences. (When I see this kind of steps, I think of the steps
I take to get ready for school in the morning, the steps in a
recipe for my favorite dessert, etc.)
Lesson Objectives

Core Content Objectives

Students will:

- Locate Egypt on a world map or globe and identify it as a part of Africa
- Explain that much of Egypt is the Sahara Desert
- Describe how the pyramids were built
- Identify the Sphinx and explain its significance in ancient Egypt

Language Arts Objectives

The following language arts objectives are addressed in this lesson. Objectives aligning with the Common Core State Standards are noted with the corresponding standard in parentheses. Refer to the Alignment Chart for additional standards addressed in all lessons in this domain.

Students will:

- Compare and contrast the Great Sphinx and the Great Pyramid (RI.1.9)
- With assistance, categorize and organize facts and information from “The Sphinx” to answer questions (W.1.8)
- Ask and answer what questions orally, requiring literal recall and understanding of the details or facts of “The Sphinx” (SL.1.2)
- Prior to listening to “The Sphinx,” make predictions orally about what will happen next in the story, and then compare the actual outcomes to predictions
- Use personal pronouns orally
Core Vocabulary

**base, n.** The lowest or bottom part of something
*Example:* While waiting at the base of the mountain, the climbers looked up and watched their teammates climb higher and higher.
*Variation(s):* bases

**Sphinx, n.** An imaginary creature with the body of a lion and head of a human
*Example:* She had seen many pictures of the Sphinx in books about Egypt.
*Variation(s):* none

**tugged, v.** Pulled hard on something
*Example:* Her little brother always tugged on her hair when they were in the car.
*Variation(s):* tug, tugs, tugging

**visible, adj.** Able to be seen
*Example:* The stars were visible because it was a clear night.
*Variation(s):* none

---

### At a Glance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exercise</th>
<th>Materials</th>
<th>Minutes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Introducing the Read-Aloud</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where Are We?</td>
<td>world map or globe</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Making Predictions About the Read-Aloud</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purpose for Listening</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Presenting the Read-Aloud</strong></td>
<td>The Sphinx</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Discussing the Read-Aloud</strong></td>
<td>Comprehension Questions</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Word Work: Visible</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Extensions</strong></td>
<td>Pyramids and the Sphinx</td>
<td>Image Cards 11, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Syntactic Awareness Activity: Subject Pronouns <em>I, you, he, she, we, they</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Introducing the Read-Aloud

Where Are We?
Choose a different student each day to locate Egypt on a world map or globe and identify it as part of Africa.

Making Predictions About the Read-Aloud
Tell students that they are going to listen to the next part of the story of Setna and Ahweru traveling to see the Great Pyramid. Setna and Ahweru also see another famous Egyptian structure.

Have students review what has happened so far by showing them the following images and guiding them in retelling the story of Djoser’s first pyramid.

Show image 8A-3: Djoser in royal bed
• How does the story of Djoser begin? (He is asleep in his bed; he has a dream.)
• What is Djoser told in the dream? (to build a special place for his body once he has died)
• When he wakes up, what does Djoser do? (He asks his friend Imhotep to design a building.)

Show image 8A-4: Djoser’s pyramid
• What does Imhotep design?

Have students predict what they think will happen in the next part of the story.

Purpose for Listening
Explain to students that the story they are about to hear continues with the characters from the previous read-aloud, Setna and Ahweru. Tell students to listen carefully to the read-aloud to find out whether or not their predictions were correct.
The Sphinx

The next morning, as their boat sailed closer and closer, Ahweru kept thinking, “Surely this must be all of it. There cannot be any more.” But more and more of the pyramid became visible to them. Soon Ahweru could see other pyramids near the great one, too. She was sure they must be very large, but they looked tiny compared to that of Khufu’s pyramid. Ahweru could not take her eyes off that one.

No wonder she was amazed. Even today, when we have skyscrapers reaching over one hundred stories into the air, the Great Pyramid is one of the world’s most thrilling sights. However, part of the pointed top is gone now. Later, people took the stone to build other things and kept the gold for themselves. Also, the smooth, white stone has worn away from the sides, revealing enormous blocks of tan limestone that the white stone originally covered.

But even without the top, the Great Pyramid is 450 feet tall. That’s about thirty-six stories high. While we have much taller buildings today, remember that the stone blocks the Egyptians moved—with just sheer muscle power—weighed thousands of pounds each. That’s more than several large automobiles put together. They cut the stone blocks from mountains farther up the Nile and floated them downstream to Giza on flat-topped boats. Then they threw ropes around the blocks, gathered dozens of workers to pull the ropes, and dragged the blocks across rows of smooth, heavy logs to the pyramid. Then more workers tugged and tugged, or pulled hard, on the ropes to pull the blocks up big ramps and into place.
As Ahweru stepped off the ship and approached the Great Pyramid, something else caught her eye. Ahead of her, rising out of the sand, lay a giant statue with the body of a lion and the head of a man. She said, “Father, is that . . .”

“Yes,” said Setna, “that is the Great Sphinx.³ It is nearly as famous as the pyramid of Pharaoh Khufu, though nowhere near as big.”

“Did Pharaoh Khufu build the Sphinx, too? Or did one of the gods do that?”

“It was a pharaoh . . .”

Ahweru interrupted, “Then I was right: it was Khufu.”

“Actually, it was his son, the Pharaoh Khafre (KAHF-rey). I suppose, like his father, he wanted to be remembered for something. But he knew that the people of Egypt had spent twenty years building his father’s pyramid and that it had cost an unbelievable amount of gold to do it. Perhaps Khafre did not wish to spend that much time and money, so he built the second largest pyramid—that one over there.”

He stopped and pointed, and Ahweru said, “When we were on the boat, that one looked bigger than the Great Pyramid. But now I see it is smaller. Why is that, Father?”

“It is built on higher ground, Ahweru, so as you approach, the second pyramid seems to be the bigger of the two. Once you reach this place, however, with both of them right in front of you, it is clear which is truly the greatest. At any rate, while Khafre knew he could not match his father’s pyramid, he must have wondered what he could do, so that he, too, would be remembered forever. I suppose that was one reason for building the Great Sphinx. Look at the face, my daughter; it is the face of Pharaoh Khafre himself.”

³ The Sphinx has the head of a man on the body of a lion.
“The Sphinx’s face is made to look like the pharaoh’s face? Why?”

“We do not know for certain, for the years have not been kind to the Great Sphinx. Twice since it was built, the sands of the desert have swallowed it up, covering it almost completely. I think there may once have been writing around the base, but the sand rubbed that away. Maybe the writing told why the pharaoh put his own face on it, but if so, those words are gone.

“However, an old story says that the lion was given the pharaoh’s face to show that Khafre was as fierce and powerful as a lion. The story adds that he set it in front of the pyramids to protect them.”

“That makes sense to me. After all, there are smaller sphinxes up near the temple at Karnak to help guard it magically.”

“Yes. This one is certainly not the only sphinx in Egypt, nor the only statue set up to guard a place. But because this one is the biggest and most beautiful, it is called ‘great.’ And today we Egyptians say that the Great Sphinx is a form of the sun god. And now, my daughter, it is time to begin our long journey home.”

Ahweru stood and looked at the huge statue for a moment. Then she said, “I am glad that I was able to see the Great Pyramid and the Sphinx. Thank you for bringing me, Father.”

“You are welcome,” Setna replied. And father and daughter returned to the boat to begin their journey home.
Discussing the Read-Aloud 15 minutes

Comprehension Questions 10 minutes

1. **Evaluative** Were your predictions about what you thought would happen in this part of the story correct? Why or why not? (Answers may vary.)

2. **Evaluative** How do you think Ahweru felt when she finally saw the Great Pyramid? (excited, happy, etc.)

3. **Literal** What was the pyramid made of back then? (gold and stones)

4. **Inferential** How was the pyramid built? (by floating blocks down the Nile; by many people dragging the stones to be put in place; etc.)

5. **Evaluative** Do you think it was harder or easier to build something like a pyramid in ancient times than it is to build a tall building today? (It was harder in ancient times because they did not have the machines that we now have.)

6. **Inferential** How would you describe the Great Sphinx to someone? (a statue with the body of a lion and the head of a man)

7. **Inferential** Why do you think the pharaoh Khafre decided to have the Great Sphinx built? (He wanted to show how powerful he was; he thought it would protect the pyramid; etc.)

8. **Inferential** Why is the Sphinx that Ahweru and Setna saw called the Great Sphinx? (There are other sphinxes that are smaller.)

[Please continue to model the Question? Pair Share process for students, as necessary, and scaffold students in their use of the process.]

9. **What? Pair Share:** Asking questions after a read-aloud is one way to see how much everyone has learned. Think of a question you can ask your neighbor about the read-aloud that starts with the word what. For example, you could ask, “What events do you remember from today’s story that Setna told about the Great Sphinx?” Turn to your neighbor and ask
your what question. Listen to your neighbor’s response. Then your neighbor will ask a new what question, and you will get a chance to respond. I will call on several of you to share your questions with the class.

10. After hearing today’s read-aloud and questions and answers, do you have any remaining questions? [If time permits, you may wish to allow for individual, group, or class research of the text and/or other resources to answer these questions.]

**Word Work: Visible**

1. In the read-aloud you heard, “But more and more of the pyramid became visible to them.”

2. Say the word visible with me.

3. If something is visible, it can be seen.

4. The sun is visible on a clear day.

5. What things are visible in the classroom? Try to use the word visible when you tell about it. [Ask two or three students. If necessary, guide and/or rephrase the students’ responses: “The chalkboard is visible.”]

6. What’s the word we’ve been talking about?

Use a Discussion activity for follow-up, and show image 9A-1. Directions: Describe what things in this image are visible. [Remind students to use the word visible in their responses.]

If time permits, you may want to teach students about the antonym—invisible.

**Complete Remainder of the Lesson Later in the Day**
Pyramids and the Sphinx

Show students Image Card 12 (Sphinx). Have students identify the picture, talk about the Image Card, and share what they learned from the read-aloud about the Great Sphinx. Ask students how the Great Sphinx is similar to the pyramids. (They were both built by ancient Egyptians, etc.) Show Image Card 11 (Pyramid) and ask students how the Great Sphinx is different from the pyramids. (The Great Sphinx was not a burial place; the pharaoh built the Great Sphinx to protect the pyramid.)

↔ Syntactic Awareness Activity: Subject pronouns I, you, he, she, we, they

The purpose of these syntactic activities is to help students understand the direct connection between grammatical structures and the meaning of text. These syntactic activities should be used in conjunction with the complex text presented in the read-alouds.

Note: There may be variations in the sentences created by your class. Allow for these variations and restate students’ sentences so that they are grammatical.

Teacher Model and Group Practice

1. We use subject pronouns to replace words that stand for people. [Whenever you see a person’s name in brackets, please replace that name with the name of a student or co-teacher in your class.]

2. When I want to talk about myself, I use the word I and can point to myself, as in “I am so happy to be your teacher.”

• Now try with your neighbor: Use the word I and point to yourself when you describe how you are feeling today. Use this sentence starter to help you begin, “I feel . . . ”
3. When I am talking face-to-face with someone else, I use the word **you** to talk directly to them. Listen as I talk to [Luis] and say something nice to him. “**You** are very helpful during art time.”

- Now you try with your neighbor: Use the word **you** and point to your neighbor as you say something nice about him or her. Use this sentence starter to help you begin, “**You** are . . . ”

4. When I am talking about a boy or a girl, I use the word **he** to talk about a boy and **she** to talk about a girl. Listen as I say something nice about a girl and a boy in our class. “[Gema] is happy. **She** always has a smile on her face. [Dorian] is kind. **He** always helps his classmates.”

- Now you try with your neighbor: Use the words **she** and **he** to say something nice about another student who is not your neighbor. Use this sentence starter to help you begin, “**He** is . . . ” or “**She** is . . . ”

5. When I am talking about myself and another person, I use the word **we** to talk about us. Listen as I talk about myself and [Ms. Cueva]. “**We** love teaching this class.”

- Now you try with your neighbor: Use the word **we** and point to yourself and your neighbor when you make up a sentence about something you and your neighbor do together. Use this sentence starter to help you begin, “**We** have fun when we . . . ”

6. When I am talking about other people, I use the word **they** to talk about them. Listen as I talk about two students in our classroom, [Isaac] and [Kenny]. “**They** are sitting in the front of the classroom.”

- Now you try with your neighbor: Use the word **they** and point to multiple students who are not in your group to say something nice about them. Use this sentence starter to help you begin, “**They** are nice when they . . . ”

**Authentic Text-Based Practice**

I am going to read a part of the read-aloud that contains many of the words we just practiced. Please stand up or raise your hand when you hear me say one of those words. Remember, the words
we just practiced are I, you, he, she, we, and they. [Acknowledge students for correctly identifying the subject pronouns in the read-aloud.]

The next morning, as their boat sailed closer and closer, Ahweru kept thinking, “Surely this must be all of it. There cannot be any more.” But more and more of the pyramid became visible to them. Soon Ahweru could see other pyramids near the great one, too. She was sure they must be very large, but they looked tiny compared to that of Khufu’s pyramid. Ahweru could not take her eyes off that one.

No wonder she was amazed. Even today, when we have skyscrapers reaching over one hundred stories into the air, the Great Pyramid is one of the world’s most thrilling sights. However, part of the pointed top is gone now. Later, people took the stone to build other things and kept the gold for themselves. Also, the smooth, white stone has worn away from the sides, revealing enormous blocks of tan limestone that the white stone originally covered.

But even without the top, the Great Pyramid is 450 feet tall. That’s about thirty-six stories high. While we have much taller buildings today, remember that the stone blocks the Egyptians moved—with just sheer muscle power—weighed thousands of pounds each. That’s more than several large automobiles put together. They cut the stone blocks from mountains farther up the Nile and floated them downstream to Giza on flat-topped boats. Then they threw ropes around the blocks, gathered dozens of workers to pull the ropes, and dragged the blocks across rows of smooth, heavy logs to the pyramid. Then more workers tugged and tugged, or pulled hard, on the ropes to pull the blocks up big ramps and into place.
Lesson Objectives

Core Content Objectives

Students will:

✓ Locate Egypt on a world map or globe and identify it as a part of Africa

✓ Identify Hatshepsut as a pharaoh of ancient Egypt and explain her significance as pharaoh

Language Arts Objectives

The following language arts objectives are addressed in this lesson. Objectives aligning with the Common Core State Standards are noted with the corresponding standard in parentheses. Refer to the Alignment Chart for additional standards addressed in all lessons in this domain.

Students will:

✓ Describe the connection between the flooding of the Nile River and the ability of the ancient Egyptians to live in the area (RI.1.3)

✓ Describe an illustration of farmers working near the Nile and use pictures and detail in “The Story of Hatshepsut” to describe the read-aloud’s key ideas (RI.1.7)

✓ Compare and contrast Hatshepsut with other Egyptian pharaohs (RI.1.9)

✓ With assistance, categorize and organize facts and information from “The Story of Hatshepsut” to answer questions (W.1.8)

✓ Use words and phrases acquired through conversations about “The Story of Hatshepsut,” including using frequently occurring conjunctions to signal simple relationships in a “Somebody Wanted But So Then” chart (L.1.6)
Prior to listening to “The Story of Hatshepsut,” identify orally what they know and have learned about ancient Egypt and about leaders in Mesopotamia.

Prior to listening to “The Story of Hatshepsut,” make predictions about the way in which Hatshepsut was different from other Egyptian leaders, and then compare the actual outcomes to predictions.

Share writing with others.

**Core Vocabulary**

*accomplishments, n.* Successes or achievements, things done well

*Example:* Writing a book about the desert was one of her many accomplishments.

*Variation(s):* accomplishment

*counselors, n.* People who give advice

*Example:* The king talked to his counselors about the peace agreement.

*Variation(s):* counselor

*declare, v.* To say or make known to everyone

*Example:* After the judges score the athletes’ performances, they declare a winner.

*Variation(s):* declares, declared, declaring

*pharaohs, n.* Kings or rulers of ancient Egypt

*Example:* Most of the pharaohs of ancient Egypt were male.

*Variation(s):* pharaoh

*tradition, n.* A special belief or way of doing something that hasn’t changed over the years

*Example:* Her favorite family tradition is going to the beach at the beginning of summer vacation.

*Variation(s):* traditions
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>At a Glance</th>
<th>Exercise</th>
<th>Materials</th>
<th>Minutes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introducing the Read-Aloud</td>
<td>Where Are We?</td>
<td>world map or globe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What Have We Already Learned?</td>
<td>Civilizations Chart from previous lessons;</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Image Cards 4, 6–10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Making Predictions About the Read-Aloud</td>
<td>Image Cards 11, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Purpose for Listening</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presenting the Read-Aloud</td>
<td>The Story of Hatshepsut</td>
<td></td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discussing the Read-Aloud</td>
<td>Comprehension Questions</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Word Work: Tradition</td>
<td>drawing paper, drawing tools</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extensions</td>
<td>Civilizations Chart</td>
<td>Image Card 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Somebody Wanted But So Then</td>
<td>Instructional Master 10B-1</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[This exercise requires advance preparation.]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Introducing the Read-Aloud

Where Are We?

Choose a different student each day to locate Egypt on a world map or globe and identify it as part of Africa.

What Have We Already Learned?

Divide the class into four groups. Give each group one of the Image Cards used for ancient Egypt: Image Card 7 (Farming Along the Nile), Image Card 8 (City in Ancient Egypt); Image Card 9 (Hieroglyphs); and Image Card 10 (Egyptian Gods). Tell students that you will give them a few minutes in their groups to talk about the Image Card and what they have learned about the ancient Egyptian civilization. Then, the class will come back together, and each group will have a few minutes to share with the class.

Ask students what they remember about farming, cities, writing, and religion in Mesopotamia. You may wish to refer to the Civilizations Chart to help students remember.

Finally, ask students what they remember about the leaders in Mesopotamia, again referring to the Civilizations Chart to help students remember. Ask students what the leader of Mesopotamia was called and have them share what they remember about the various kings and their contributions to the cradle of civilization. Show the applicable Image Cards: Image Card 4 (Code of Hammurabi) and Image Card 6 (Nebuchadnezzar).
Making Predictions About the Read-Aloud

Tell students that they have already learned about several pharaohs or leaders in ancient Egypt who built some amazing architectural structures. Ask if anyone can name the ones you’ve already discussed. Show Image Card 11 (Pyramid) and Image Card 12 (Sphinx) as a reminder. Tell them that today they will hear about another ancient Egyptian leader, a pharaoh named Hatshepsut. Tell them that this read-aloud begins with some facts about Ancient Egypt and then it turns into a made-up story about a real pharaoh who lived a long time ago. Tell them that there is something very different about this leader compared to the other leaders they have learned about thus far. Ask students to predict what is so different about Hatshepsut.

Purpose for Listening

Tell students to listen carefully to the read-aloud to find out whether or not their predictions are correct.
The Story of Hatshepsut

In ancient times, kings of Egypt were called pharaohs. But the word pharaoh didn’t always mean “king.” At first it just meant “big house” or “palace” because the pharaoh was the person who lived in the biggest house in Egypt, the royal palace.

Pharaohs were considered much more than kings, however. The flooding of the Nile meant life or death to the Egyptians, and they thought the pharaoh had something to do with making the Nile overflow each spring. In fact, they believed that the pharaoh was not just a man; they thought he was also a god. Because he was such an important person, the ancient Egyptians had certain rules that told how a pharaoh should be chosen.

And like so many other things the Egyptians did—whether it was the way they painted their pictures, or dressed, or prayed—once they decided how to do something, they didn’t like to change the rules. But about three thousand five hundred years ago somebody changed the rules for them. And that person was a princess.

Hatshepsut—think of her name as “hat, shep, soot”—was the daughter of a pharaoh named Thutmose (thut-MOE-se) the First. Thutmose was already fairly old when he became pharaoh, and he wanted to do all he could for Egypt in the time he had left, so he worked extra hard. As he got older, he could not keep up this pace. Luckily, his beloved daughter, Hatshepsut, said, “I will help you run Egypt, father.”

“Thank you, daughter,” he replied, and he gave her more and more of his responsibilities to handle. Hatshepsut enjoyed this and did a fine job. But then, sadly, Thutmose the First grew ill and died.
So the Egyptians needed a new pharaoh. You might think they would pick Hatshepsut, since she already knew how to do the job. But tradition said the pharaoh had to be male, not female, and we know how the Egyptians felt about changing rules. So Hatshepsut’s cousin became Pharaoh Thutmose the Second.

Show image 10A-4: Pharaoh and Hatshepsut sitting on thrones

Then Thutmose the Second also died and the royal court chose Hatshepsut’s young nephew to become Pharaoh Thutmose the Third. But Hatshepsut had had enough of doing all the work while someone else got to be pharaoh. She announced, “I have decided to become co-ruler of Egypt with my nephew, Thutmose the Third. We will be pharaohs together.”

One of the wise, old counselors hobbled forward and said, “Excuse me, Princess, but I’m sure you remember that the pharaoh has to be . . . a man!”

For what she did next, some people have called her “the first great woman in human history.” Hatshepsut simply replied, “That is no problem. I officially declare myself a man!”

Show image 10A-5: Hatshepsut dressed as a man with beard

So Hatshepsut and Thutmose the Third were both called “pharaoh,” but she ran the country. She directed builders and artists to put up pictures and statues of her dressed as a man, and even wearing a beard. It was so hot in Egypt in those days before air conditioning that, in order to stay cooler, Egyptians shaved their heads, and the men wore no beards or mustaches. But pharaohs wore skinny, fake beards in order to look wise. Only now it was a woman wearing the beard!

Show image 10A-6: Hatshepsut’s temple

Hatshepsut was an excellent pharaoh. She constructed one of the greatest temples to the Egyptian gods, and she built up trade between Egypt and some of her distant neighbors. Every time she did something good, her builders would carve advertisements into
the walls of buildings, describing the terrific job Hatshepsut was doing.

After Hatshepsut’s death, Thutmose decided to put up walls to cover up the images of Hatshepsut’s accomplishments.\(^9\) He wanted people to forget about Hatshepsut. Thutmose also set out to conquer many other countries around Egypt, making Egypt and its people incredibly rich and powerful. Today he is considered one of the greatest of all the ancient pharaohs.

**Show image 10A-7: Statue of Hatshepsut**

Thousands of years later, modern scientists took down the walls hiding the temple carvings. Not only had those walls hidden the carvings, they had actually kept harsh weather or other things from destroying Hatshepsut’s image and the words she had chosen to tell about herself. Although he had wanted to make people forget, Thutmose had preserved by accident the memory of Hatshepsut, the woman who made herself a pharaoh.

**Discussing the Read-Aloud**

**Comprehension Questions**

1. **Evaluative** Were your predictions about how Hatshepsut was different from other leaders you have learned about correct? (Answers may vary.)

2. **Literal** Did the ancient Egyptian civilization have a leader? (yes) What was the leader called? (pharaoh)

3. **Inferential** What kinds of things did Hatshepsut do while pharaoh? (She had pictures and statues made of her dressed as a man; she had a temple built; she traded with neighbors.)

4. **Evaluative** How was Hatshepsut different from the other pharaohs? (female)

5. **Evaluative** How was Hatshepsut like other pharaohs? (ruler)

[Please continue to model the Think Pair Share process for students, as necessary, and scaffold students in their use of the process.]
I am going to ask a question. I will give you a minute to think about the question, and then I will ask you to turn to your neighbor and discuss the question. Finally, I will call on several of you to share what you discussed with your partner.

6. **Evaluative Think Pair Share:** Why was being pharaoh so important that she declared herself a man? (She had already been doing the work; she thought she was the best person to be the leader; etc.)

7. After hearing today’s read-aloud and questions and answers, do you have any remaining questions? [If time permits, you may wish to allow for individual, group, or class research of the text and/or other resources to answer these questions.]

---

**Word Work: Tradition**

1. In the read-aloud you heard, “But tradition said the pharaoh had to be male, not female, and we know how the Egyptians felt about changing rules.”

2. Say the word *tradition* with me.

3. A tradition is a way of doing something that has continued in the same way for many years.

4. My family has a tradition of watching fireworks on the Fourth of July.

5. Does your family have a certain tradition? Try to use the word *tradition* when you tell about it. [Ask two or three students. If necessary, guide and/or rephrase the students’ responses: “My family has a tradition of . . .”]

6. What’s the word we’ve been talking about?

Use a *Drawing* activity for follow-up. Directions: Draw a picture of one of your family’s favorite traditions.

Give students the opportunity to share their drawings and writing with a partner or the class, making sure that they use the word *tradition*.

Above and Beyond: For those students who are able to do so, have them write about their drawing.

---

Complete Remainder of the Lesson Later in the Day


**Civilizations Chart**

Show students Image Card 13 (Hatshepsut). Talk about the Image Card and have students share what they learned from the read-aloud about Hatshepsut and pharaohs in ancient Egypt. Ask students how this is similar to Mesopotamia. (They both had rulers who influenced what happened during the development of the civilization.) Ask students how Hatshepsut is different from the leaders of Mesopotamia. (Hatshepsut was female.) Tell students that you are going to place the Image Card in the Leaders column on the Civilizations Chart to help them remember that the ancient Egyptians had leaders called pharaohs.

**Somebody Wanted But So Then**

*(Instructional Master 10B-1)*

Write the following blank summary chart on chart paper, a chalkboard, or a whiteboard.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Somebody</th>
<th>Wanted</th>
<th>But</th>
<th>So</th>
<th>Then</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Tell students that they are going to talk about the read-aloud and that you are going to write down what they say, but that they are not expected to be able to read what you write because they are still learning all the rules for decoding. Emphasize that you are writing what they say so that you don’t forget, and that you will read the words to them. Modeling this type of writing will help prepare students to do this type of activity on their own.
Above and Beyond: Use Instructional Master 10B-1 for those students who are able to do the writing on their own.

Ask students who the read-aloud was about. Tell them that you are going to write Hatshepsut’s name on the chart.

Ask students what Hatshepsut wanted. Tell them that you are going to write that Hatshepsut wanted to be pharaoh.

Ask students what kept Hatshepsut from being pharaoh at first. Tell them that you are going to write that the tradition was that only men could be pharaohs.

Ask students what Hatshepsut decided to do. Tell them that you are going to write that Hatshepsut declared herself a man.

Ask students what happened once Hatshepsut declared herself a man. Tell them that you are going to write that she ruled as pharaoh.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Somebody</th>
<th>Hatshepsut</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wanted</td>
<td>Wanted to be pharaoh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>But</td>
<td>But, tradition said that only men could be pharaoh.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>So</td>
<td>So, Hatshepsut declared herself a man.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Then</td>
<td>Then, Hatshepsut ruled as pharaoh.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Read the completed chart to the class.
Lesson Objectives

Core Content Objectives

Students will:

✓ Locate Egypt on a world map or globe and identify it as a part of Africa
✓ Identify Tutankhamun as a pharaoh of ancient Egypt
✓ Describe key components of a civilization
✓ Explain that much of what we know about ancient Egypt is because of the work of archaeologists

Language Arts Objectives

The following language arts objectives are addressed in this lesson. Objectives aligning with the Common Core State Standards are noted with the corresponding standard in parentheses. Refer to the Alignment Chart for additional standards addressed in all lessons in this domain.

Students will:

✓ With assistance, categorize and organize facts and information from “Tutankhamun, The Golden Pharaoh, Part I” (W.1.8)
✓ Add drawings to descriptions of components of civilizations to clarify ideas and thoughts (SL.1.5)
✓ Prior to listening to “Tutankhamun, the Golden Pharaoh, Part I,” identify orally what they know and have learned about pharaohs
Core Vocabulary

archaeologist, *n.* A scientist who studies the way people lived in the past
  
  Example: The archaeologists worked for years to find the location of the ancient city.
  
  Variation(s): archaeologists

authority, *n.* Power to make or enforce rules or laws
  
  Example: The police have the authority to stop speeding cars.
  
  Variation(s): authorities

passage, *n.* A space along which something or someone may pass, i.e., a hallway
  
  Example: The group walked along a secret passage in the castle.
  
  Variation(s): passages

tombs, *n.* Places for the burial of the dead
  
  Example: Egyptian pharaohs were buried in tombs.
  
  Variation(s): tomb

valuable, *adj.* Precious or worth a lot of money
  
  Example: The dishes had been in the family for many years and were very valuable.
  
  Variation(s): none

---

At a Glance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exercise</th>
<th>Materials</th>
<th>Minutes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introducing the Read-Aloud</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where Are We?</td>
<td>world map or globe</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What Have We Already Learned?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purpose for Listening</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presenting the Read-Aloud</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutankhamun, The Golden Pharaoh, Part I</td>
<td></td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discussing the Read-Aloud</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comprehension Questions</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Word Work: Archaeologist</td>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extensions</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Civilizations Chart</td>
<td>Instructional Master 4B-1; Image Cards 7–14</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Where Are We?

Choose a different student each day to locate Egypt on a world map or globe and identify it as part of Africa.

What Have We Already Learned?

Ask students what they have already learned about the pharaohs of ancient Egypt and more specifically what they learned about Hatshepsut. You may prompt discussion with the following questions:

- What was the job of a pharaoh? (ruler)

Show image 10A-5: Hatshepsut dressed as a man with beard

- How was Hatshepsut different from other pharaohs? (female)
- What kinds of things did Hatshepsut do as pharaoh? (had statues made of herself, had a temple built, traded with neighbors)

Purpose for Listening

Tell students that the next read-aloud is about other pharaohs of ancient Egypt. Tell the students to listen carefully to learn more about pharaohs of ancient Egypt.
Many years after Hatshepsut ruled, another pharaoh would rule for nine years and then be almost completely forgotten for three thousand years. His name was Tutankhamun (toot-awn-KAH-mun), although today he is known all over the world as “King Tut.” Tutankhamun was only nine years old when he became pharaoh, and he died when he was only nineteen.

We are not sure why he died at such an early age. After his death, some thought he may have had some sort of accident. When he died, he was not buried in a pyramid like the pharaohs in Hatshepsut’s time. Instead, during King Tut’s time, pharaohs were buried in the hillsides of a valley. That valley was called the Valley of the Kings. None of the tombs of the pharaohs in the Valley of the Kings were marked. So in an unmarked tomb in that valley, Pharaoh Tutankhamun would rest, surrounded by treasure and forgotten by the world, for nearly thirty-three centuries—a very long time ago.

Now we will jump way ahead in time from ancient Egypt to a time closer to today. Almost one hundred years ago, a British archaeologist named Howard Carter was interested in trying to find the lost tombs in the Valley of the Kings. Carter’s partner was a British nobleman, Lord Carnarvon. Carnarvon was also interested in finding the lost tombs in the Valley of the Kings.

Over the next few years, working for and often accompanied by Lord Carnarvon, Carter found a number of ancient objects scattered throughout the valley. But he had in mind a greater prize. Another archaeologist found objects that had hieroglyphs...
written on them mentioning Pharaoh Tutankhamun. Howard Carter was determined to find the tomb of Pharaoh Tutankhamun and was convinced that somewhere in the Valley of the Kings lay Tutankhamun’s hidden burial site. Could he find it?  

Trying to find the location of the tomb was not always easy—or safe. Robbers often showed up to steal any valuable objects whenever they heard of new discoveries.

In a book about his career, archaeologist Howard Carter wrote about one dangerous encounter with such thieves in the Valley of the Kings. A band of robbers had learned of a discovery, and on a moonlit night the thieves crept through the shadows of the valley, determined to steal whatever they could carry away. But just as they were starting to gather the loot, a second band of robbers appeared with the same idea! Instantly, the two gangs attacked one another in a fierce battle there in the moonlight amid the burial sites of the ancient pharaohs. The second gang chased off the first, but Howard Carter, in his nearby camp, heard the noise of their fight. Here is how he calmly described what happened next.

Show image 11A-4: Valley of the Kings

“I collected the few of my workmen still nearby, and set out for the scene of action, an expedition involving a climb of more than 1,800 feet over the hills in the moonlight. It was midnight when we arrived on the scene. The guide pointed out to me the end of a rope dangling down the face of the cliff. Listening, we could hear the robbers actually at work. I first cut their rope, cutting off their means of escape. Then, making secure a good, stout rope of my own, I lowered myself down the cliff.”

Show image 11A-5: Carter shinnying down rope to a group of tomb robbers

“. . . There were eight [robbers] at work, and when I neared the bottom, there was an awkward moment or two. . . . Eventually [the robbers] saw reason and departed. The rest of the night I spent guarding the spot.”
For six years, archaeologist Howard Carter searched for the tomb of Pharaoh Tutankhamun. The two men had focused their attention on one area in the Valley of the Kings. All that was left was the ground beneath some huts in which ancient workers had lived while digging the royal tombs. Carter decided to give this area one last try. He and his men removed the huts and leveled off the soil below. As Carter finished removing the first of the workers’ huts, he found something very exciting! For there—lost to the world for thirty-two centuries, and almost overlooked by Carter and his partner Carnarvon in six years of digging—was a stone staircase leading down into the rocky floor of the valley!

Carter and his men uncovered the steps one by one until, as they cleared the dirt from the top of the twelfth step, they saw beyond it, in Carter’s own words, the upper part of a doorway. Atop the door was a hieroglyphic seal showing that the door had been sealed shut under royal authority. Whoever had been buried here was either royal or someone very important to the pharaoh.

Almost overcome with excitement, Carter cut a small hole in the door and shone a light through the hole. Inside, he saw a hallway filled to the top with rocks. It took all his self-control not to break through and begin flinging the rocks out. Instead, leaving some of his men to guard the place, he covered the door up again and rode off through the moonlight, thinking, “Anything might lie beyond that passage!” Yet none of them was exactly sure what Carter had found.
### Discussing the Read-Aloud

#### Comprehension Questions

1. **What do you think Carter found?** (Answers may vary.)

2. **Literal** What was the name of the pharaoh in today’s read-aloud? *(Tutankhamun)* What is Tutankhamun’s nickname? *(King Tut)*

3. **Literal** Was King Tut an adult or a child when he became pharaoh? How old was he? *(He was a child, just nine years old.)*

4. **Inferential** Was King Tut pharaoh for many, many years or for just a short time? Why? *(He ruled for a short time because he died at about age nineteen.)*

5. **Inferential** Was King Tut buried in a pyramid? *(No)* Why not? *(Pyramids were no longer used for burial during the time King Tut lived.)* Where was he buried? *(in a tomb in the Valley of the Kings)*

6. **Evaluative** Do you think you could rule a country at age nine? Why or why not? (Answers may vary.)

7. **Inferential** Who was Howard Carter? *(an archaeologist looking for Tut’s tomb)* Why do you think he was interested in finding King Tut’s tomb? *(He perhaps wanted to be famous; he thought there would be lots of treasure; it was an amazing archaeological discovery; etc.)*

[Please continue to model the *Think Pair Share* process for students, as necessary, and scaffold students in their use of the process.]

I am going to ask a question. I will give you a minute to think about the question, and then I will ask you to turn to your neighbor and discuss the question. Finally, I will call on several of you to share what you discussed with your partner.

8. **Evaluative** *Think Pair Share:* Would you have liked to work with Carter? Why or why not? (Answers may vary.)

9. After hearing today’s read-aloud and questions and answers, do you have any remaining questions? *[If time permits, you may wish to allow for individual, group, or class research of the text and/or other resources to answer these questions.]*
Word Work: Archaeologist

1. In the read-aloud you heard, “A British archaeologist named Howard Carter was interested in trying to find the lost tombs in the Valley of the Kings.”

2. Say the word archaeologist with me.

3. An archaeologist is a scientist who studies people of the past by looking at what they left behind, such as tools or pottery. Archaeologists often dig into the ground to find what was left behind.

4. An archaeologist recently found pottery from an ancient Native American village.

5. Have you ever heard about the work of an archaeologist? Try to use the word archaeologist when you tell about it. [Ask two or three students. If necessary, guide and/or rephrase the students’ responses: “I saw on TV that an archaeologist . . .”]

6. What’s the word we’ve been talking about?

Use a Making Choices activity for follow-up. Directions: I am going to read a sentence. If it describes the work of an archaeologist, say, “That’s an archaeologist.” If it does not describe the work of an archaeologist, say, “That’s not an archaeologist.”

1. I have been digging for evidence of how the Pilgrims lived long ago. (That’s an archaeologist.)

2. I have been digging up potatoes from my garden. (That’s not an archaeologist.)

3. I have been digging for evidence that Native Americans lived in this area long ago. (That’s an archaeologist.)

4. I have been digging a hole to plant a tree. (That’s not an archaeologist.)

5. I have been digging for evidence that there used to be a city along the banks of the river. (That’s an archaeologist.)
Civilizations Chart (Instructional Master 4B-1)

Show students Image Card 14 (Tutankhamun). Talk about the Image Card, and have students share what they learned from the read-aloud about King Tut. Ask students how King Tut was similar to Hatshepsut. (They were both leaders or pharaohs in ancient Egypt.) Ask students how King Tut was different from Hatshepsut. (male, etc.)

Use the Civilizations Chart and Image Cards 7–14 to review what has been learned about ancient Egypt. Divide the class into eight groups. Give each group one of the Image Cards to discuss within the group. Then, have the groups come back together and share with the class. Remember to repeat and expand upon each response using richer and more complex language, including, if possible, any read-aloud vocabulary.

Explain that we know that there was a civilization in ancient Egypt because the people farmed near the Nile, built cities, developed a way of writing, had leaders called pharaohs, had a religion, and built structures, including pyramids and the Great Sphinx.

Pass out the students’ copies of Instructional Master 4B-1 that they started in Lesson 4. Have students draw pictures to show what they have learned about the various components of the ancient Egyptian civilization.

Above and Beyond: For students who are able to do so, have them write words or sentences. After completing the ancient Egypt section, students may talk with a partner or as a class about how the two civilizations compare.

Tell students that, as a class, they are going to dictate a few sentences—which you will write—explaining why ancient Egypt is considered a civilization. Have students brainstorm what was
learned about this civilization. Model how to write a beginning sentence telling what the paragraph will be about. For example, “We have learned that there was a civilization in ancient Egypt.” Then ask students to share sentences explaining how we know that there was a civilization and record their sentences. Finally, model how to add a concluding sentence, such as, “The civilization of ancient Egypt had many of the same things as other civilizations such as Mesopotamia.” Read the completed paragraph to the class.

Above and Beyond: If you have students who are ready to write their own explanation, you may ask them to do so.
Lesson Objectives

Core Content Objectives

Students will:

- Locate Egypt on a world map or globe and identify it as a part of Africa
- Identify Tutankhamun as a pharaoh of ancient Egypt and explain his significance
- Explain that much of what we know about ancient Egypt is because of the work of archaeologists

Language Arts Objectives

The following language arts objectives are addressed in this lesson. Objectives aligning with the Common Core State Standards are noted with the corresponding standard in parentheses. Refer to the Alignment Chart for additional standards addressed in all lessons in this domain.

Students will:

- Describe the connection between King Tut’s tomb and historians’ knowledge of ancient Egyptian culture (RI.1.3)
- Ask and answer who questions orally, requiring literal recall and understanding of the details or facts of “Tutankhamun, the Golden Pharaoh, Part II” (SL.1.2)
- Add drawings to descriptions of details about Mesopotamia and ancient Egypt (SL.1.5)
- Prior to listening to “Tutankhamun, the Golden Pharaoh, Part II,” make predictions about what Howard Carter found in King Tut’s tomb, and then compare the actual outcomes to predictions
- Share writing with others
Core Vocabulary

**priceless, adj.** Worth more than any amount of money

*Example:* My grandmother thinks that my artwork is priceless.

*Variation(s):* none

**sarcophagus, n.** A stone coffin

*Example:* The mummy was placed in the sarcophagus.

*Variation(s):* sarcophaguses or sarcophagi

**triumph, n.** A great success

*Example:* The band’s performance was a triumph, and everyone was pleased.

*Variation(s):* triumphs

---

### At a Glance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exercise</th>
<th>Materials</th>
<th>Minutes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Introducing the Read-Aloud</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where Are We?</td>
<td>world map or globe</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Making Predictions About the Read-Aloud</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purpose for Listening</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Presenting the Read-Aloud</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutankhamun, The Golden Pharaoh, Part II</td>
<td></td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Discussing the Read-Aloud</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comprehension Questions</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Word Work: Triumph</td>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complete Remainder of the Lesson Later in the Day</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Extensions</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Image Card Review</td>
<td>Image Cards 1–14</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class Book</td>
<td>drawing paper, drawing tools</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Take-Home Material</strong></td>
<td>Family Letter</td>
<td>Instructional Master 12B-1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Introducing the Read-Aloud 10 minutes

Where Are We?
Choose a different student each day to locate Egypt on a world map or globe and identify it as part of Africa.

Making Predictions About the Read-Aloud
Ask students to share what happened in the previous read-aloud about archaeologist Howard Carter’s search for King Tut’s tomb. You may want to show the images from the last read-aloud to help with the retelling. Have students predict what they think Carter found at the end of the last read-aloud. Reread the last sentence of the read-aloud from Lesson 11, if necessary.

Purpose for Listening
Tell students to listen carefully to find out whether or not their predictions are correct.
Tutankhamun, The Golden Pharaoh, Part II

Show image 12A-1: Carter and others looking at part of door in passageway

After clearing what turned out to be the last of sixteen stairs, Howard Carter and Lord Carnarvon saw, carved into the door a few inches lower than Carter had been able to see the first time, the royal sign of Pharaoh Tutankhamun. But Carter also saw signs that part of the door had been opened before, and then resealed.¹ After all their work, would they find an empty tomb?²

For days, the crew worked to clear the rock-filled passageway, anxious to move ahead but afraid of destroying anything important if they moved too fast. Thirty-two feet in, they found another door! This one also had Tutankhamun’s seal and more signs that part of it had been broken open. Carter cut another hole, lit a candle, and looked through. The others, fairly dancing with excitement behind him, waited, but he said nothing—because, as it turned out, he could not speak. He was too overcome. At last Carnarvon demanded, “Can you see anything?” Howard Carter turned slowly, and answered, “Yes—wonderful things!”³

Show image 12A-2: Tut’s throne, and other golden objects

What they saw was just a hint of what appeared several days later when they opened that door and entered by the light of electric torches, or flashlights. As those torches lit up the room beyond, light flashed back at the explorers: reflections in gold! There, shining in the torchlight, were a golden throne, a statue of a golden snake, couches made of gold, golden clothing draped over two large, black stone statues, and much more.

Looking around, Carter and Carnarvon saw ancient Egyptian art pieces of great beauty, some unlike any they had ever seen before. These were priceless not only for the gold and jewels all over them, but also because they would give new clues to the

1 Who do you think might have opened and resealed the door?
2 What do you think? Will the tomb be empty?
3 What do you think Carter saw?
religious beliefs and way of life of the ancient Egyptians. Then one of Carter’s assistants called, “There is another door.” Sure enough, there was another, smaller room, filled with more objects. But unlike those in the first room, these were thrown about, as if a robber, feverishly searching through the riches of the place, had been interrupted and had left them behind in a hurry.

But among all these wonders, something was missing: there was no mummy, nor even a mummy case, or sarcophagus (sahr-kof-uh-gus). There was a moment of mixed triumph and disappointment. But the surprises of that day were not over. As Carnarvon and Carter reentered the first room, they glanced at the far wall, and almost at the same moment shouted, “Look!” For in that wall they saw a fourth door.

4 **Priceless** means worth more than any amount of money. Remember, archaeologists work to find out about other cultures by looking at what the people left behind.

5 A sarcophagus is a stone coffin. A mummy is the body of someone who has died and which has been wrapped in cloth. The mummy is placed in the sarcophagus.

6 A triumph is a success.

7 Why do you think there were so many doors?

Show image 12A-3: Tut’s burial chamber

Already they had found the largest, most valuable collection of ancient Egyptian treasures ever discovered. It would take several months before their team could examine everything and gently move it out. Finally, Howard Carter gently pulled away some stones atop the fourth door, and, holding up a light, looked in. At his side, an assistant held up a microphone to carry Carter’s words by radio around the world. Here is how Howard Carter later described what he saw beyond the door: “There, within a yard of the doorway, stretching as far as one could see, stood a solid wall of gold! There was no clue as to its meaning. But with the removal of a very few stones, that mystery was solved. We were at the entrance of the actual burial chamber of the king. That which barred our way was the side of an immense, golden shrine built to cover and protect the sarcophagus which held the long-lost pharaoh!”

Show image 12A-4: Tut’s sarcophagus

They had found the burial chamber of Tutankhamun almost three thousand, three hundred years after his death. The great cover surrounding his mummy case stood eighteen feet wide,
eleven feet long, and nine feet high—all covered in gold! Carved into this were hieroglyphic symbols. The walls of the room were covered with hieroglyphic words and paintings of Tutankhamun and the Egyptian gods.

Show image 12A-5: King Tut’s gold mask

The sarcophagus itself turned out to hold a series of cases, one inside the next, some of wood covered in gold. The innermost case, holding the mummy, would become one of the most famous images in the world. It was made of solid gold. Inside it was the king’s mummy, with a mask over his face, made of gold and of shining blue stone.

The discovery of King Tut and his treasures excited people all over the world. Wherever the news spread, people said, “We want to know more about ancient Egypt. We want to learn how we are different from those ancient Egyptians, and how we might be the same.” Nearly a hundred years later, people are still saying it. All this happened because two men, Howard Carter and Lord Carnarvon, wondered about someone who had lived more than three thousand years before them: Tutankhamun, Pharaoh of Egypt.
Discussing the Read-Aloud

Comprehension Questions

1. **Evaluative** Were your predictions about what Howard Carter found correct? Why or why not? (Answers may vary.)

2. **Literal** What did Carter and the others find inside the tomb? (many objects made of gold, e.g., throne, statues, couch, King Tut’s sarcophagus with mummy, etc.)

3. **Inferential** How do you think Carter felt when he finally discovered King Tut’s tomb? (excited, thrilled, etc.)

4. **Inferential** The read-aloud is titled “Tutankhamun, The Golden Pharaoh.” Why did the author chose that title? (Lots of gold objects were found in his tomb; etc.)

5. **Inferential** Why was the discovery of King Tut’s tomb so important? (This is how we know much of what we know about ancient Egypt.)

6. **Evaluative** Do you think that archaeologists will continue to make new discoveries about ancient Egypt? Why or why not? (Answers may vary.)

[Please continue to model the Question? Pair Share process for students, as necessary, and scaffold students in their use of the process.]

7. **Who? Pair Share:** Asking questions after a read-aloud is one way to see how much everyone has learned. Think of a question you can ask your neighbor about the read-aloud that starts with the word who. For example, you could ask, “Who did you hear about in today’s read-aloud?” Turn to your neighbor and ask your who question. Listen to your neighbor’s response. Then your neighbor will ask a new who question, and you will get a chance to respond. I will call on several of you to share your questions with the class.

8. After hearing today’s read-aloud and questions and answers, do you have any remaining questions? [If time permits, you may wish to allow for individual, group, or class research of the text and/or other resources to answer these questions.]
Word Work: Triumph

1. In the read-aloud you heard, “There was a moment of mixed triumph and disappointment,” when Carter first found objects in King Tut’s tomb.

2. Say the word triumph with me.

3. A triumph is a success or win.

4. Reading the book all by myself was a triumph.

5. Have you ever had a triumph? Try to use the word triumph when you tell about it. [Ask two or three students. If necessary, guide and/or rephrase the students’ responses: “It was a triumph when I . . .”]

6. What’s the word we’ve been talking about?

Use a Making Choices activity for follow-up. Directions: I am going to read about an event. If it describes a triumph, say, “That is a triumph.” If it doesn’t describe a triumph, say, “That is not a triumph.”

1. winning a race (That is a triumph.)
2. refusing to do your homework (That is not a triumph.)
3. singing in front of the school (That is a triumph.)
4. memorizing your favorite poem (That is a triumph.)
5. forgetting to brush your teeth (That is not a triumph.)

Complete Remainder of the Lesson Later in the Day
Extensions

Image Card Review

Pass out all of the Image Cards for Mesopotamia and ancient Egypt to various students. Have students take turns telling all that they can about what is shown on each Image Card.

Class Book

After reviewing what has been learned about Mesopotamia and ancient Egypt, tell students that they are each going to make a page for a class book about Mesopotamia and ancient Egypt. Brainstorm what the various pages may be about. Have each student draw a picture for one fact or concept. Then have students write a sentence about the picture. Some students may need to dictate to an adult what will be written. Others may write a complete sentence on their own. Give students the opportunity to share their pictures and sentences with a partner or the class. Bind the pages to make a book that will become a part of the classroom library for students to read and enjoy again and again.

Take-Home Material

Family Letter

Send home Instructional Master 12B-1.
Note to Teacher

You should pause here and spend one day reviewing, reinforcing, or extending the material taught thus far.

You may have students do any combination of the activities listed below, but it is highly recommended that you use the Mid-Domain Student Performance Task Assessment to assess students’ knowledge of Early World Civilizations. The other activities may be done in any order. You may wish to do one activity on successive days. You may also choose to do an activity with the whole class or with a small group of students who would benefit from the particular activity.

Core Content Objectives Up to This Pausing Point

Students will:

✓ Locate the area known as Mesopotamia on a world map or globe and identify it as part of Asia

✓ Explain the importance of the Tigris and Euphrates rivers and the use of canals to support farming and the development of the city of Babylon

✓ Describe the city of Babylon and the Hanging Gardens

✓ Identify cuneiform as the system of writing used in Mesopotamia

✓ Explain why a written language is important to the development of a civilization

✓ Explain the significance of the Code of Hammurabi

✓ Explain why rules and laws are important to the development of a civilization

✓ Explain the ways in which a leader is important to the development of a civilization
✓ Explain the significance of gods/goddesses, ziggurats, temples, and priests in Mesopotamia
✓ Describe key components of a civilization
✓ Identify Mesopotamia as the “Cradle of Civilization”
✓ Describe how a civilization evolves and changes over time
✓ Locate Egypt on a world map or globe, and identify it as a part of Africa
✓ Explain the importance of the Nile River and how its floods were important for farming
✓ Identify hieroglyphics as the system of writing used in ancient Egypt
✓ Explain the significance of gods/goddesses in ancient Egypt
✓ Identify pyramids and explain their significance in ancient Egypt
✓ Describe how the pyramids were built
✓ Explain that much of Egypt is the Sahara Desert
✓ Identify the Sphinx and explain its significance in ancient Egypt
✓ Identify Hatshepsut as a pharaoh and explain her significance as pharaoh
✓ Identify Tutankhamun as a pharaoh of ancient Egypt and explain his significance
✓ Explain that much of what we know about ancient Egypt is because of the work of archaeologists

**Student Performance Task**

**Components of Civilizations (Instructional Master PP2-1)**

Distribute one copy of PP2-1 to each student. Have students complete the chart with pictures and/or written descriptions of each of the five components of civilizations as they relate to ancient Egypt.
**Activities**

**Egypt**

**Materials: World map, globe**

On a world map or globe, help students locate and identify the area in which the ancient Egyptians lived. *(Egypt, in Africa)* Locate the Nile River for students. Have students talk about the environment in which the ancient Egyptians lived and the importance of the Nile for farming, travel, and transportation.

**Image Review**

You may wish to show the Flip Book images from any read-aloud again and have students retell the read-aloud using the pictures.

**Image Card Review**

**Materials: Image Cards 7–14**

Hold Image Cards 7–14 in your hand, fanned out like a deck of cards. Ask a student to choose a card but not show it to anyone else in the class. The student must then perform an action or say a clue about the picture s/he is holding.

**Key Vocabulary Brainstorming**

**Materials: Chart paper, chalkboard, or whiteboard**

Give students a key vocabulary word, such as *archaeologist*. Have them brainstorm everything that comes to mind when they hear the word. Record their responses on chart paper, a chalkboard, or a whiteboard for reference.

**Domain-Related Trade Book or Student Choice**

**Materials: Trade book**

Read a trade book to review what students have learned about ancient Egypt; refer to the books listed in the domain introduction. You may also choose to have students select a read-aloud to be heard again.
Mini Farming on the Nile

**Materials:** Fast-growing seeds; two small containers; soil; sand; water

Plant fast-growing seeds in two containers of a mixture of sand and soil. Label one container “Near the Nile” and the other container “Far from the Nile.” Water only the container labeled “Near the Nile” and have students observe both containers. Make sure that students understand that plants flourished near the Nile because of the water that came from the Nile and that plants farther from the Nile were harder to grow because of the lack of water in the desert.

You Were There: Living with the Ancient Egyptians

Have students pretend that they lived with the ancient Egyptians. Choose an event from Lessons 5–10, and have students describe what they see and hear. For example, you may wish to have students pretend they are traveling down the Nile River with Ahweru, seeing the Great Pyramid and the Sphinx for the first time.

Ancient Egyptian Tales of Gods

You may wish to share other stories about ancient Egyptian gods—such as Isis, Osiris, and Horus—to reinforce the polytheist beliefs of the culture. You should be able to find these stories in the library or on the Internet.

Make Your Own Mummy

**Materials:** Dolls or action figures; toilet paper

You may choose to make a station where students can make mummies with toilet paper and dolls. Make sure that students explain what they are doing and why—relating this activity back to the ancient Egyptian practice.
Chocolate Chip Archaeologists

**Materials: Chocolate chip cookies; toothpicks (one of each per student)**

Remind students that archaeologists are scientists who study the ruins and remains of a society to learn more about that society. Tell students that they are going to be archaeologists for the day. Explain that they should pretend that the chocolate chips in the cookies are the ruins of the ancient Egyptian society. In order to learn more about the society, they will have to dig up the ruins (chocolate chips) with a toothpick. Tell students that they should be very careful not to break or chip the chocolate chips as they dig them out.

**Note:** Be sure to check with your school’s policy regarding food distribution and allergies.

Ancient Egyptian Ruins

To learn more about ancient Egyptian ruins, use an Internet search to find pictures and descriptions of ancient Egyptian archaeological sites.
Lesson Objectives

Core Content Objectives

Students will:

✓ Identify Judaism, Christianity, and Islam as major monotheistic world religions

✓ Locate Jerusalem, Israel, and the area known as the Middle East on a map

✓ Define monotheism as the belief in one God

✓ Identify the Western Wall (or the Wailing Wall) as associated with Judaism, the Church of the Holy Sepulchre with Christianity, and the Dome of the Rock with Islam

Language Arts Objectives

The following language arts objectives are addressed in this lesson. Objectives aligning with the Common Core State Standards are noted with the corresponding standard in parentheses. Refer to the Alignment Chart for additional standards addressed in all lessons in this domain.

Students will:

✓ Describe the connection between the city of Jerusalem and the three monotheistic religions of Judaism, Christianity, and Islam (RI.1.3)

✓ Describe illustrations of various religious buildings and use pictures and details in “Three World Religions” to describe the read-aloud’s key ideas (RI.1.7)

✓ Make personal connections between religions they know about and the topic of “Three World Religions” (W.1.8)

✓ With assistance, categorize and organize facts and information from “Three World Religions” to answer questions (W.1.8)
✓ Ask and answer what questions orally, requiring literal recall and understanding of the details or facts of “Three World Religions” (SL.1.2)

✓ Prior to listening to “Three World Religions,” identify orally what they know and have learned about religion in Mesopotamia and ancient Egypt

Core Vocabulary

Note: The definitions of the three religions are generic because this is the introductory lesson to these religions. Students will be able to fill in additional details as you cover the rest of the lessons in this domain.

Christianity, n. The religion of the Christians; one of the three major world religions
Example: Christianity was spread throughout the world as Jesus’ followers preached what they called the “good news” of his life, death, and resurrection.
Variation(s): none

faithful, adj. Loyal; dependable
Example: Thomas was faithful to his grandfather, reading to him every day.
Variation(s): none

shrine, n. A sacred or holy place of worship
Example: The Dome of the Rock is an Islamic shrine in Jerusalem that is famous for its architecture.
Variation(s): shrines

Islam, n. The religion of the Muslims; one of the three major world religions
Example: Muhammad’s teachings form the basis of Islam.
Variation(s): none

Judaism, n. The religion of the Jewish people; one of the three major world religions
Example: Judaism is the oldest of the three major religions we are learning about today.
Variation(s): none
### At a Glance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exercise</th>
<th>Materials</th>
<th>Minutes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Introducing the Read-Aloud</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What Have We Already Learned?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Personal Connections</td>
<td>chart paper, chalkboard, or whiteboard</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where Are We?</td>
<td>world map or globe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purpose for Listening</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Presenting the Read-Aloud</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Three World Religions</td>
<td>list of religions created in “Personal Connections”</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Discussing the Read-Aloud</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comprehension Questions</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Word Work: Faithful</td>
<td>drawing paper, drawing tools</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Extensions</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Three-Column Chart: Three World Religions</td>
<td>Instructional Master 13B-1; chart paper, chalkboard, or whiteboard; [This exercise requires advance preparation.]</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Introducing the Read-Aloud

What Have We Already Learned?

Tell students they are going to learn more about religion in order to understand historical events. Remind them that they learned the word religion in an earlier lesson. Ask, “What does religion mean?” (the belief in and worship of a superhuman controlling power, especially a personal God or many gods) Explain that religions began a very long time ago. Say, “You have been studying about ancient peoples in the Middle East. You have learned about Mesopotamia and ancient Egypt. What are some of the things you learned about the religions of those civilizations?” (Student responses should include the fact that ancient peoples of this region worshiped many gods and goddesses; review the term polytheism.)

Explain that some religions are not polytheistic, but that they are monotheistic. Ask, “Who knows or can guess the meaning of the word part mono–?” (Mono– means one.) Explain that over the next few days, they are going to be learning about three monotheistic religions, or religions that have a belief in only one God.

Personal Connections

If students know the name of a religious group, ask them to share it. Accept all answers, even if students identify only one particular sect or denomination of the religion. (Make a list on a chart.) Tell students that there are many different religions in the world today.

Where Are We?

Using a world map or globe, show students the Middle East. Point out the locations of Mesopotamia and ancient Egypt that they have already learned. Tell them that they will be learning about three different religions and that all three began in the Middle East. These three religions have many followers around the world today.
**Purpose for Listening**

Tell students to listen carefully to find out the names of three major religions in the world today.
Three World Religions

Show image 13A-1: Sky

Have you ever wondered how the universe came to be? Or why the stars shine at night? Or what makes a rainbow? Perhaps you’ve wondered what causes a thunderstorm or an earthquake, or why the earth has more water than land. Well, you are not alone. Lots of people have wondered about these same things for thousands of years.

Show image 13A-2: Gods and goddesses of Mesopotamia

To find answers to these questions, people looked at the natural world around them. They were amazed by the power of the sun and moon and stars. Some people believed some animals were sacred, or holy, and they worshiped them.

The ancient Mesopotamians and Egyptians worshiped many gods and goddesses whom they believed controlled everything that happened on Earth. They made offerings to the gods and held festivals and ceremonies in their honor.

People began following religions long, long ago. People have always asked many questions: How did people come to live on the earth? What are the stars in the sky? Who, if anyone, controls everything that happens? Their explanations of all the mysteries of the universe became stories that they told one another, long before writing was ever invented.

Show image 13A-3: Three major religions

Not everyone in ancient times had the same beliefs or religions. The same is true today. There are many different religious beliefs and many different religions.
You are going to learn a little bit about three of the many different religions practiced in the world today. The oldest of the three religions that you will learn about is called Judaism. The second one is called Christianity. And the third religion is called Islam. All three of these religions had their beginnings in an area of the world known as the Middle East.

Show image 13A-4: Map of Middle East, highlighting Jerusalem

In fact, all three religions call the city of Jerusalem a holy, or sacred, city.

Show image 13A-5: The Western Wall

People who practice Judaism—Jewish people—worship at many places, including a place known as the Western Wall. This is the only remaining support wall that was part of the ancient temple in Jerusalem on the western side of the Temple Mount. That is why it is called “the Western Wall.” Because this site is so holy to Jewish people, sometimes when people pray there, they get very emotional as they worship, leading some people to refer to this wall by its nickname, “the Wailing Wall.”

Show image 13A-6: Church of the Holy Sepulchre

Christians, people who practice Christianity, worship at many places, including a place known as the Church of the Holy Sepulchre. A sepulchre is a place where dead people are placed. This church is the main Christian shrine in Jerusalem.

Show image 13A-7: Dome of the Rock

Muslims, people who practice Islam, worship at many places, including a place known as the Dome of the Rock. Made of marble and tile, this is the oldest complete example of an Islamic building that is still standing today.
Jewish people, Christians, and Muslims worship in many other places around the world in addition to these three holy shrines in Jerusalem.  

How did these religions begin, and why do all three consider the city of Jerusalem to be a holy city? Well, about four thousand years ago in a land called Ur, there lived a man by the name of Abraham. The people of Ur worshiped many different gods—one for the sun, one for the moon, one for the stars, and so on. But Abraham had a different belief; he believed that there was only one God.

Stories tell us that this one all-powerful God spoke to Abraham, promising to lead him out of Ur. Abraham and his wife, Sarah, packed their things and traveled far, far away to a place called Canaan in ancient times. Some people refer to Canaan as “the promised land.” Today, it is known as the country of Israel, which is where the holy city of Jerusalem is located. It was here that Abraham remained faithful to his one God, who is often called the God of Abraham.

All three religions—Judaism, Christianity, and Islam—are monotheistic faiths, or faiths that believe in one God. Over the next few days, you will learn important differences about each of these world religions. It is important to remember that all three religions—Judaism, Christianity, and Islam—started long ago in the Middle East, that all three religions have sets of beliefs that help people make sense of their universe, and that all three religions have influenced the laws and customs of people around the world for many years.
Discussing the Read-Aloud 15 minutes

Comprehension Questions 10 minutes

1. **Literal** People have always wondered and asked questions about the universe and the world in which they lived. How did people long ago, before writing was even invented, share what they believed? (They told stories.)

2. **Inferential** The early Egyptians and other ancient people believed that many gods influenced or controlled life on earth, so they worshiped them. What was different about Abraham? (He worshiped only one God.)

3. **Literal** What does it mean if a religion is *monotheistic*? (It centers around a belief in one God, not many.)

4. **Literal** What are the three world religions named in today’s read-aloud? (Judaism, Christianity, Islam)

5. **Literal** What is the name of the city in the Middle East considered to be a holy city by all three religions we learned about today? (Jerusalem) [Have a student point to the region known as the Middle East, the country of Israel, and the city of Jerusalem in the image.]

6. **Evaluative** If you were to visit the holy city of Jerusalem, which place would you like to visit most—the Wailing Wall, the Church of the Holy Sepulchre, or the Dome of the Rock? Why? (Answers may vary.)

[Please continue to model the Question? Pair Share process for students, as necessary, and scaffold students in their use of the process.]
7. **What? Pair Share:** Asking questions after a read-aloud is one way to see how much everyone has learned. Think of a question you can ask your neighbor about the read-aloud that starts with the word *what*. For example, you could ask, “What did you learn about in today’s read-aloud?” Turn to your neighbor and ask your *what* question. Listen to your neighbor’s response. Then your neighbor will ask a new *what* question, and you will get a chance to respond. I will call on several of you to share your questions with the class.

8. After hearing today’s read-aloud and questions and answers, do you have any remaining questions? [If time permits, you may wish to allow for individual, group, or class research of the text and/or other resources to answer these questions.]

**Word Work: Faithful**

1. In the read-aloud you heard, “Abraham remained *faithful* to his one God.”

2. Say the word *faithful* with me.

3. *Faithful* means being loyal to someone or something.

4. Juanita showed she was faithful to her little sister by reading a story to her every day and by comforting her when she was upset.

5. Tell about being faithful to something or someone in your life. Try to use the word *faithful* when you tell about it. [Ask two or three students. If necessary, guide and/or rephrase the students’ responses: “I am faithful to my dog because I feed him every day.”]

6. What’s the word we’ve been talking about?

Use a *Drawing and Writing* activity for follow-up. Directions: Draw a picture of a person who is being faithful, or loyal, to someone or something.

➢ **Above and Beyond:** For those students able to do so, have them write a sentence or two, including the word *faithful* to accompany their drawings.

👋 **Complete Remainder of the Lesson Later in the Day**
Three World Religions

Three-Column Chart: Three World Religions (Instructional Master 13B-1)

On chart paper, create a three-column chart like the one shown on the next page. Label the columns Judaism, Christianity, and Islam. Fill in the bolded headers in the left-hand column, but leave the rest of the chart blank. You will fill that in with students over the next several days as the material is presented to them in the read-alouds.

Explain that you are going to use this chart to talk about the next three read-alouds. Tell students that you are going to write down what they say on the chart, but that they are not expected to be able to read what you write because they are still learning all the rules for decoding. Emphasize that you are writing what they say so that you don’t forget, and tell them that you will read the words to them.

For today’s purposes, first present students with the structure of the chart so that they have an idea of what they will be learning in subsequent lessons. Explain that Judaism, Christianity, and Islam are alike in one way. Ask students to help you fill out the first row for each religion (Number of Gods). Then, introduce the remaining characteristics along the vertical axis, explaining that the three religions are different in many ways. Finally, ask students to help you fill out the second row for each religion (Name of Main Shrine in Jerusalem). Tell them that they will help you fill in the rest of the chart as they learn more about each religion in the coming lessons.

Above and Beyond: If students are able, you may want to have them fill in their own charts using Instructional Master 13B-1.
### Three World Religions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Judaism</th>
<th>Christianity</th>
<th>Islam</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>NUMBER OF GODS</strong></td>
<td>one</td>
<td>one</td>
<td>one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>NAME OF MAIN SHRINE IN JERUSALEM</strong></td>
<td>The Western Wall or The Wailing Wall</td>
<td>Church of the Holy Sepulchre</td>
<td>Dome of the Rock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>NAME OF KEY FIGURES</strong></td>
<td>Abraham, Moses</td>
<td>Jesus</td>
<td>Muhammad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>NAME OF FOLLOWERS</strong></td>
<td>Jewish people</td>
<td>Christians</td>
<td>Muslims</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SYMBOL OF FAITH</strong></td>
<td>Star of David</td>
<td>Cross</td>
<td>Crescent Moon and Star</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>BUILDING OF WORSHIP</strong></td>
<td>synagogue/temple</td>
<td>church/chapel/cathedral</td>
<td>mosque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>WORSHIP LEADER</strong></td>
<td>rabbi</td>
<td>priest/pastor/minister</td>
<td>imam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>NAME OF HOLY BOOK</strong></td>
<td>Torah</td>
<td>Bible</td>
<td>Qur’an</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IMPORTANT HOLIDAY</strong></td>
<td>Passover</td>
<td>Easter, Christmas</td>
<td>Ramadan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>INTERESTING FACT</strong></td>
<td>Answers may vary.</td>
<td>Answers may vary.</td>
<td>Answers may vary.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** The parts of the chart that will be filled out in this lesson are shown in bold.
Lesson Objectives

Core Content Objectives

Students will:

✓ Identify Judaism as a monotheistic religion
✓ Identify the Hebrews as the ancient people who were descendants of Abraham
✓ Explain that followers of Judaism are called Jewish people and that the term Jewish is used to describe practices or objects associated with Judaism
✓ Identify the Star of David as a six-pointed star and a symbol of Judaism
✓ Identify the Torah as an important part of the Hebrew scriptures
✓ Identify that a Jewish house of worship is called a synagogue or temple
✓ Identify Moses as a teacher who long ago led the Jewish people out of Egypt in an event referred to as the Exodus
✓ Explain that, according to an important story in the Torah, Moses received the Ten Commandments from God and that the Ten Commandments are rules that tell people how to behave or live their lives
✓ Identify important Jewish holidays such as Passover, Rosh Hashanah, Yom Kippur, and Hanukkah

Language Arts Objectives

The following language arts objectives are addressed in this lesson. Objectives aligning with the Common Core State Standards are noted with the corresponding standard in parentheses. Refer to the Alignment Chart for additional standards addressed in all lessons in this domain.
Students will:

✓ Describe the connection between Abraham and the Jewish people (RI.1.3)

✓ Describe an illustration of Moses and use pictures and details in “Judaism” to describe the read-aloud’s key ideas (RI.1.7)

✓ With assistance, categorize and organize facts and information from “Judaism” to answer questions (W.1.8)

Core Vocabulary

**Hebrew, adj.** Relating to the tribe of people from whom the Jewish people are descended or a language spoken in Israel

*Example:* Moses led the Hebrew people out of Egypt into Canaan.

*Variation(s):* Hebrews

**Jewish, adj.** Belonging to or related to the practice of Judaism

*Example:* Hanukkah is a Jewish holiday that is celebrated during the month of December.

*Variation(s):* none

**prophet, n.** A leader in a religion who teaches other people

*Example:* Moses was the Jewish prophet who led his people to freedom.

*Variation(s):* prophets

**rabbi, n.** A Jewish religious leader, often serving a synagogue

*Example:* The rabbi read to us from the Torah on Saturday, our Sabbath.

*Variation(s):* rabbis

**synagogue, n.** A Jewish place of worship

*Example:* Jewish people often go to the synagogue to pray.

*Variation(s):* synagogues

---

### At a Glance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exercise</th>
<th>Materials</th>
<th>Minutes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Introducing the Read-Aloud</strong></td>
<td>Essential Background Information or Terms; Purpose for Listening</td>
<td>Three-Column Chart: Three World Religions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Presenting the Read-Aloud</strong></td>
<td>Judaism</td>
<td>world map</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Discussing the Read-Aloud</strong></td>
<td>Comprehension Questions; Word Work: Synagogue</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Extensions</strong></td>
<td>Three-Column Chart: Three World Religions</td>
<td>Instructional Master 13B-1; chart</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Introducing the Read-Aloud

Essential Background Information or Terms

You may wish to start out with a review of the previous lesson and what you have filled in thus far on the chart about the three major religions.

Remind students that Abraham was a man who lived thousands of years ago. Remind them that other people who were living during this time worshiped many different gods and goddesses. Review the story of Abraham covered in the previous read-aloud and how Abraham promised to worship one God instead of many different gods. As a result of this, Abraham and his wife traveled to a new place. Ask, “Where did Abraham journey to when he left the land of Ur?” (Canaan) Reiterate that Abraham worshiped only one God. Abraham believed that God would make him the father of many nations, and Abraham became the first Jewish person. We call the faith that Jewish people follow Judaism.

Tell students that many religions have prophets. Prophets are leaders in a religion who teach other people. Their teachings are often about religion. Today, students will learn a little bit about the Jewish people and their faith, and how a man, one of the Jewish prophets, helped lead the Jewish people out of slavery many years ago.

Purpose for Listening

Tell students to listen to find out the name of the prophet who freed the Jewish people from slavery and why that was important.
Judaism

Show image 14A-1: Miriam

Hi, I’m Miriam. I am Jewish. Jewish people practice a religion called Judaism. Judaism began long ago with the Hebrew people, descendants of Abraham. You’ve already heard about Abraham. Jewish people believe that God made a covenant, or agreement, with Abraham. In this covenant, God promised to take care of Abraham and his descendants, and Abraham promised to worship only God instead of following the common practice of worshiping many different gods.¹

Long after Abraham died, the Hebrews had to leave the “Promised Land” of Canaan because there was not enough food to eat. They moved to neighboring Egypt, where they were made to work as slaves for the king, or pharaoh, of Egypt.²

Show image 14A-2: Moses³

After many years, God sent a prophet⁴ named Moses to help free the Hebrew people and lead them back to Canaan, “the promised land.”⁵

Show image 14A-3: Moses and the parting of the Red Sea⁶

Moses asked the Egyptian pharaoh to free the Jewish people from slavery, but the pharaoh refused. God punished the pharaoh for enslaving the Jewish people.⁷ Finally, the pharaoh let the Jewish slaves leave Egypt and return to Canaan. Moses led them to freedom by obeying God, who parted, or pushed back, the waters of the Red Sea so the Jewish people could walk through to Canaan. This journey out of Egypt is called the Exodus.⁸
Today I am celebrating the holiday of Pesach [PAY-sock], or Passover, with my family. It is one of our most important Jewish holidays. Passover is when we celebrate the freedom of our people from slavery in Egypt and their journey back to Canaan. I am going to the synagogue to hear the story of Moses once again. Won’t you come along?

This is my synagogue or temple. You can tell it apart from other houses of worship because it has the Star of David on it. King David was one of our finest kings and his six-pointed star has become a symbol of the Jewish faith. Let’s go in!

Inside, I will introduce you to my uncle, the rabbi. A rabbi is a religious leader for the Jewish faith. He will read from the Torah, a beautiful handwritten scroll.

The Torah refers to all of the Hebrew scriptures, but most often when Jewish people say “Torah” they mean the first five books that are mostly about Moses.

There’s my uncle. We are a little bit late. He has already begun reading the story. He reads in Hebrew, the ancient language of the Jewish people.

Tonight, as part of our celebration, we will tell the Exodus story. Would you like to join my family at our Seder? Seder is the name of our special Passover dinner. It’s a lot like our weekly Shabbat [sha-BAHHT] or Sabbath, our holy day of rest on Saturday when the whole family gathers together for a big, special meal. The youngest person in the room who can speak is the one who begins the Seder by asking, “Why is this night different from all other nights?”
At a Seder, the food we eat is very important. Each food put on the Seder plate has a special meaning to help us remember the story of Moses and the Hebrews escaping from Egypt.

Passover lasts for one week and each day we eat matzoh, or flat bread. That is because when the Jewish people fled Egypt so quickly, they did not have time to wait for their bread to rise. All they had to eat was flat bread. See what I mean about each food at our Seder having a special meaning?

Passover is a really important holiday for my people, but we have lots of other holidays as well.

We also celebrate Rosh Hashanah, the Jewish New Year, which happens during late summer or autumn. We eat sweet foods such as apples and honey to represent our wish for a sweet year ahead. That is when we thank God for the creation of the world.

During another Jewish holiday called Hanukkah [HAH-noo-kuh], meaning the Festival of Lights, Jewish people all around the world light nine-branched candlesticks called menorahs. They light the menorahs to remember the past, a time when they rebelled against the rulers who had conquered them. These rulers told the Jewish people that they could no longer pray to God. The story goes that when the Jewish people went to the temple, they only found a small jar of oil with which to relight the lamp; however, the oil lasted miraculously for eight days until they were able to get more.

Another of our holidays, Yom Kippur, is a time when we ask God to forgive our sins. We try to live our lives by the Ten Commandments, special laws given to Moses by God. They tell us that there is only one God and that we are to respect him by treating others respectfully.
Discussing the Read-Aloud

Comprehension Questions

1. **Literal** Miriam said that she practices a religion called Judaism. What are the people who practice Judaism called? (Jewish people)

2. **Literal** The descendants of Abraham were known at first as Hebrews, and later as Jewish people. How many gods did Abraham and the Hebrews/Jewish people worship? (only one God)

3. **Literal** What was the name of the Jewish prophet or teacher who helped free the Jewish people? (Moses)

4. **Inferential** Moses led the Jewish people out of Egypt to Canaan, “the promised land.” This is known as the story of the Exodus, which happened long ago in ancient times. Why were the Jewish people unhappy in Egypt? (The pharaoh, or king, had made them slaves.)

5. **Evaluative** The read-aloud tells us that every year at Passover, the rabbi reads the same story from the Torah. It is the story of the Exodus from Egypt. Why do you think it is important for the Jewish people to remember this story? (Answers may vary.)

6. **Literal** What is the symbol of the Jewish religion? (the star of David)

7. **Literal** What is the Jewish house of worship called? (synagogue or temple)

8. **Inferential** Do the Jewish people celebrate any other holidays besides Passover? (yes) What are some of the others? (Rosh Hashanah, Hanukkah, Yom Kippur, etc.)

9. **Literal** Miriam mentions that the Jewish Sabbath, or day of rest and worship, is on what day of the week? (Saturday)
10. **Literal** Moses received the Ten Commandments from God. The commandments gave Moses and his people rules for living. How many gods did the Ten Commandments say to worship? (only one God)

[Please continue to model the *Think Pair Share* process for students, as necessary, and scaffold students in their use of the process.]

I am going to ask a question. I will give you a minute to think about the question, and then I will ask you to turn to your neighbor and discuss the question. Finally, I will call on several of you to share what you discussed with your partner.

11. **Evaluative** *Think Pair Share*: If you were going to write ten commandments, or rules for how people should live, what would one of your commandments be? (Answers may vary. Compare them to classroom rules.)

12. After hearing today’s read-aloud and questions and answers, do you have any remaining questions? [If time permits, you may wish to allow for individual, group, or class research of the text and/or other resources to answer these questions.]

**Word Work: Synagogue**

1. In the read-aloud you heard, “I am going to the synagogue to hear the story of Moses once again.”

2. Say the word *synagogue* with me.

3. A synagogue is a place of worship for the Jewish people.

4. A synagogue, also called a temple, is where Jewish people go to pray.

5. Have you ever been to a synagogue or another place of worship that is similar to a synagogue? Tell about it. Try to use the word *synagogue* when you tell about it. [Ask two or three students. If necessary, guide and/or rephrase the students’ responses: “I went to my friend’s synagogue with her.”]

6. What’s the word we’ve been talking about?
Use a *Making Choices* activity for follow-up. Directions: I am going to read some activities or symbols that may or may not belong inside a synagogue. You should say either, “That could happen in a synagogue,” or “That could not happen in a synagogue.”

1. The rabbi read from the holy book called the Torah. (That could happen in a synagogue.)

2. Loud cheers were heard as the basketball players took their places on the court. (That could not happen in a synagogue.)

3. The Jewish people bowed their heads in prayer. (That could happen in a synagogue.)

4. The Star of David was hung in the front of the building. (That could happen in a synagogue.)

5. Elephants and tigers arrived for the spectacular circus performance. (That could not happen in a synagogue.)

☆ Complete Remainder of the Lesson Later in the Day
Three-Column Chart: Three World Religions (Instructional Master 13B-1)

Display the incomplete three-column chart like the one shown below.

Explain to students that you are going to use this chart to talk about today’s read-aloud. Tell them that you are going to write down what they say on the chart, but that they are not expected to be able to read what you write because they are still learning all the rules for decoding. Emphasize that you are writing what they say so that you don’t forget and tell them that you will read the words to them.

Ask students to help you in filling in the spaces under the Judaism column. If students have trouble recalling facts, you may wish to use images from the Flip Book to remind them of relevant details. If students are able, you may want to have them continue filling in their own charts using Instructional Master 13B-1.

Note: Be sure to remind students throughout their work on the Three-Column Chart that these are just three of many religions in the world.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NUMBER OF GODS</th>
<th>JUDAISM</th>
<th>CHRISTIANITY</th>
<th>ISLAM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>one</td>
<td>one</td>
<td>one</td>
<td>one</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME OF MAIN SHRINE IN JERUSALEM</th>
<th>JUDAISM</th>
<th>CHRISTIANITY</th>
<th>ISLAM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Western Wall or The Wailing Wall</td>
<td>The Church of the Holy Sepulchre</td>
<td>Dome of the Rock</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME OF KEY FIGURE(S)</th>
<th>JUDAISM</th>
<th>CHRISTIANITY</th>
<th>ISLAM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abraham, Moses</td>
<td>Abraham, Moses</td>
<td>Jesus</td>
<td>Muhammad</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME OF FOLLOWERS</th>
<th>JUDAISM</th>
<th>CHRISTIANITY</th>
<th>ISLAM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jewish people</td>
<td>Jewish people</td>
<td>Christians</td>
<td>Muslims</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SYMBOL OF FAITH</th>
<th>JUDAISM</th>
<th>CHRISTIANITY</th>
<th>ISLAM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Star of David</td>
<td>Star of David</td>
<td>Cross</td>
<td>Crescent Moon and Star</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BUILDING OF WORSHIP</th>
<th>JUDAISM</th>
<th>CHRISTIANITY</th>
<th>ISLAM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>synagogue/temple</td>
<td>church/chapel/cathedral</td>
<td>mosque</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WORSHIP LEADER</th>
<th>JUDAISM</th>
<th>CHRISTIANITY</th>
<th>ISLAM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rabbi</td>
<td>rabbi</td>
<td>priest/pastor/minister</td>
<td>imam</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME OF HOLY BOOK</th>
<th>JUDAISM</th>
<th>CHRISTIANITY</th>
<th>ISLAM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Torah</td>
<td>Torah</td>
<td>Bible</td>
<td>Qur’an</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IMPORTANT HOLIDAY</th>
<th>JUDAISM</th>
<th>CHRISTIANITY</th>
<th>ISLAM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Passover</td>
<td>Passover</td>
<td>Easter, Christmas</td>
<td>Ramadan</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INTERESTING FACT</th>
<th>JUDAISM</th>
<th>CHRISTIANITY</th>
<th>ISLAM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Answers may vary.</td>
<td>Answers may vary.</td>
<td>Answers may vary.</td>
<td>Answers may vary.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Domain-Related Trade Book**

Refer to the list of recommended trade books in the domain introduction at the front of this Anthology and choose a book about Judaism to read aloud to the class. As you read, use the same strategies that you have been using when reading the read-aloud selections in this Anthology—pause and ask occasional questions; rapidly clarify critical vocabulary within the context of the read-aloud; etc. After you finish reading the trade book aloud, lead students in a discussion as to how the story or information in this book relates to the read-aloud in this lesson.
Lesson Objectives

Core Content Objectives

Students will:

✓ Identify Christianity as a monotheistic religion
✓ Explain that Christianity developed after Judaism
✓ Explain that followers of Christianity are called Christians
✓ Recognize the cross as a symbol of Christianity
✓ Identify the Bible as the Christian holy book
✓ Identify that a Christian house of worship is called a church
✓ Identify that Christians believe Jesus to be the Messiah and the son of God
✓ Identify Easter and Christmas as important Christian holidays
✓ Recognize that both Christians and Jewish people follow the Ten Commandments

Language Arts Objectives

The following language arts objectives are addressed in this lesson. Objectives aligning with the Common Core State Standards are noted with the corresponding standard in parentheses. Refer to the Alignment Chart for additional standards addressed in all lessons in this domain.

Students will:

✓ Describe the connection between Judaism and Christianity (RI.1.3)
✓ Compare and contrast Judaism and Christianity (RI.1.9)
✓ With assistance, categorize and organize facts and information from “Christianity” to answer questions (W.1.8)
✓ Prior to listening to “Christianity,” identify orally what they know and have learned about polytheism, monotheism, and Judaism

**Core Vocabulary**

**Christian, n.** Someone whose religion is based on the teachings of Jesus  
*Example:* A Christian believes that Jesus is the son of God.  
*Variation(s):* Christians

**church, n.** A public house of worship for the Christian faith  
*Example:* My aunt was married in the church last Sunday.  
*Variation(s):* churches

**eternal, adj.** Lasting forever; never-ending  
*Example:* Some people believe that life is eternal and will never end.  
*Variation(s):* none

**Messiah, n.** A savior, predicted by ancient Hebrews, and believed by Christians to be Jesus  
*Example:* There are many songs about the Messiah in Christian hymn books.  
*Variation(s):* none

**miracle, n.** An often unexpected and always extraordinary, nearly unbelievable event, usually thought to be brought about by God  
*Example:* In the New Testament, I read about a miracle performed by Jesus.  
*Variation(s):* miracles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>At a Glance</th>
<th>Exercise</th>
<th>Materials</th>
<th>Minutes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Introducing the Read-Aloud</strong></td>
<td>What Have We Already Learned?</td>
<td>Three-Column Chart: Three World Religions</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purpose for Listening</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Presenting the Read-Aloud</strong></td>
<td>Christianity</td>
<td></td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Discussing the Read-Aloud</strong></td>
<td>Comprehension Questions</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Word Work: Miracle</td>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complete Remainder of the Lesson Later in the Day</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Extensions</strong></td>
<td>Three-Column Chart: Three World Religions</td>
<td>Instructional Master 13B-1; chart</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Domain-Related Trade Book</td>
<td>trade book</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Introducing the Read-Aloud

What Have We Already Learned?

You may wish to start out with a review of the previous lesson and what you have filled in thus far on the chart about the three major religions during the extensions of earlier lessons.

Remind students that Judaism is a religion that practices the belief in one God. Ask if they recall a word used to describe belief in one God. (monotheistic; monotheism) Ask, “What is the word we learned to describe the belief in many gods?” (polytheistic; polytheism) Then ask students to name the prophet that led the Jewish people out of Egypt to “the promised land.” (Moses) Remind them that a prophet is a leader in a religion who teaches other people.

Tell them that they are going to learn about another monotheistic religion today—a religion that also has a holy figure. Ask them if anyone knows the name of the key Christian holy figure or leader. (Jesus)

Purpose for Listening

Tell students that Christians believe Jesus is more than just a prophet. Tell them to listen to find out who Christians believe Jesus to be.
Today is Easter, one of the most important holidays in Christianity. My name is Peter and I am a Christian, a follower of Jesus. Miriam is my good friend. I know that she has already told you a little bit about her religion, Judaism. Well, Christianity grew out of Judaism. In fact, Jesus was Jewish.

Remember how Moses freed the Jewish people and led them back to “the promised land” of Canaan, or Israel? Well, long after that, the Jewish people again struggled to be free. Their land had been conquered and ruled by Roman soldiers. They were no longer free. They prayed for a Messiah, or savior, who would bring peace and justice to the world. They thought this would include freedom from Roman rule. It was at this time that Jesus was born. Some Jewish people believed that Jesus was the Messiah for whom they prayed.

Jesus was a holy leader and a special teacher. Christians today believe Jesus is the Messiah, sent to save the people here on Earth. Christians also believe that Jesus is the son of God.

Jesus spent long hours teaching people about God’s love for them and instructing them to be kind to one another. Jesus seemed to care about everybody—the rich and the poor, the healthy and the sick, the good and the bad. He became so popular with the people that some began to call him the king of the Jewish people.
According to the Bible, on the third day after Jesus died, he rose from the dead and came back to life. Christians believe that Jesus died so that his followers might also experience life after death and forgiveness for their sins or wrongdoings. This miracle is why Christians all around the world celebrate Easter. So, now that you know why today is so special, come along to church with me. I have some things I’d like to show you.

**Show image 15A-5: Church**

This is my church. Some of my friends go to a chapel, which is a small church, and others go to a great big cathedral. You could say my church is medium-sized. You can tell it is a Christian church because of the cross on the top.

**Show image 15A-6: Cross**

The cross is an important symbol of the Christian faith because Christians believe that Jesus died on a cross so, according to my religion, we could live with him forever.

**Show image 15A-7: Cross with purple drape**

During Holy Week, the week before Easter, the cross is draped in a purple cloth to remember the miracle of Jesus’ resurrection, or his rising from the dead and coming back to life. Today, I will place flowers on the cross as a symbol of rebirth and eternal life.

**Show image 15A-8: Bible with lilies**

Let’s go inside. The church is full of Easter lilies today. The minister, priest, or pastor gives a sermon, or talk, every Sunday. He reads from the Bible, our holy book. Part of our Bible, the Old Testament, contains the same books of Jewish scriptures. But today’s readings will come from the New Testament. It is full of stories about the life of Jesus, including today’s story of the Resurrection. After we sing some special Easter songs and hymns, musicians with big brass instruments will play and join in with their loud and joyous praise!
Christians also celebrate the birth of Jesus. That day is called Christmas, which is celebrated on the twenty-fifth of December. Christians sometimes act out the nativity scene, when the baby Jesus was born in a manger.

At Christmas, Christians also give presents to one another, just as the three wise men who visited the baby Jesus when he was born gave him presents over two thousand years ago. There are other special days for Christians, but the two biggest celebrations by far are Christmas and Easter.

After Jesus died on the cross, his disciples, or followers, continued to spread his teachings to others. Today, Christianity is widely practiced around the world. There are many different groups of Christians, but they share many of the same practices, or ways of doing things. Most practicing Christians go to church on Sunday morning, their day of rest, where they meet to pray and sing songs. Christians also try to live their lives by the Ten Commandments. Finally, Christians believe that Jesus is God’s son and the Messiah, our savior.

Pacem (PAH-chem). Peace be with you.
Discussing the Read-Aloud

Comprehension Questions

1. **Literal** What is the name given to people who practice Christianity and follow the teachings of Jesus? (Christians)

2. **Inferential** Who do Christians believe Jesus to be? (the son of God; the Messiah or savior)

3. **Inferential** Which faith came first, Christianity or Judaism? (Judaism; Christianity grew out of Judaism.)

4. **Literal** What is the symbol of the Christian religion? (a cross)

5. **Inferential** On Easter, Christians celebrate a Christian miracle. What is that? (Jesus’ coming back to life after he died)

6. **Literal** The Jewish house of worship is called a synagogue. What is the Christian house of worship called? (church)

7. **Literal** The read-aloud tells us that the Christian holy book contains the Old Testament (which includes the Torah) and the New Testament. What is the Christian holy book called? (the Bible)

8. **Literal** The Jewish day of rest or Sabbath is on Saturday. When is the Christian day of rest? (Sunday)

[Please continue to model the Think Pair Share process for students, as necessary, and scaffold students in their use of the process.]

I am going to ask a question. I will give you a minute to think about the question, and then I will ask you to turn to your neighbor and discuss the question. Finally, I will call on several of you to share what you discussed with your partner.

9. **Evaluative** Think Pair Share: In what ways do Christianity and Judaism seem the same to you? (Both follow the Ten Commandments; both are monotheistic; etc.) What are some ways they are different? (Answers may vary.)

10. After hearing today’s read-aloud and questions and answers, do you have any remaining questions? [If time permits, you may wish to allow for individual, group, or class research of the text and/or other resources to answer these questions.]
1. In the read-aloud you heard, “[The] miracle [of Jesus coming back to life after he died] is why Christians all around the world celebrate Easter.”

2. Say the word *miracle* with me.

3. A miracle is something truly fantastic—extraordinary, nearly unbelievable.

4. I think that it is a miracle that no one was hurt in the earthquake.

5. What do you think is a miracle? Try to use the word *miracle* when you tell about it. [Ask two or three students. If necessary, guide and/or rephrase the students’ responses: “To me, it is a miracle that . . .”]

6. What’s the word we’ve been talking about?

Use an *Imagination* activity for follow-up. Directions: Turn and talk to your partner. Pretend that you could ask for a miracle to be performed and that your wish for the miracle would be granted. What would that miracle be? Be sure to use the word *miracle* and explain why it would be a miracle.

![Complete Remainder of the Lesson Later in the Day](image.png)
Three-Column Chart: Three World Religions
(Instructional Master 13B-1)

Display the incomplete three-column chart like the one shown below.

Explain to students that you are going to use this chart to talk about today’s read-aloud. Tell them that you are going to write down what they say on the chart, but that they are not expected to be able to read what you write because they are still learning all the rules for decoding. Emphasize that you are writing what they say so that you don’t forget, and tell them that you will read the words to them.

Ask students to help you in filling in the spaces under the Christianity column. If students have trouble recalling facts, you may wish to use images from the Flip Book to remind them of relevant details. If students are able, you may want to have them continue filling in their own charts using Instructional Master 13B-1.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NUMBER OF GODS</th>
<th>JUDAISM</th>
<th>CHRISTIANITY</th>
<th>ISLAM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>one</td>
<td>one</td>
<td>one</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME OF MAIN SHRINE IN JERUSALEM</th>
<th>JUDAISM</th>
<th>CHRISTIANITY</th>
<th>ISLAM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Western Wall or The Wailing Wall</td>
<td>Church of the Holy Sepulchre</td>
<td>Dome of the Rock</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME OF KEY FIGURE(S)</th>
<th>JUDAISM</th>
<th>CHRISTIANITY</th>
<th>ISLAM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abraham, Moses</td>
<td>Jesus</td>
<td>Muhammad</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME OF FOLLOWERS</th>
<th>JUDAISM</th>
<th>CHRISTIANITY</th>
<th>ISLAM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jewish people</td>
<td>Christians</td>
<td>Muslims</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SYMBOL OF FAITH</th>
<th>JUDAISM</th>
<th>CHRISTIANITY</th>
<th>ISLAM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Star of David</td>
<td>Cross</td>
<td>Crescent Moon and Star</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BUILDING OF WORSHIP</th>
<th>JUDAISM</th>
<th>CHRISTIANITY</th>
<th>ISLAM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>synagogue/temple</td>
<td>church/chapel/cathedral</td>
<td>mosque</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WORSHIP LEADER</th>
<th>JUDAISM</th>
<th>CHRISTIANITY</th>
<th>ISLAM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rabbi</td>
<td>priest/pastor/minister</td>
<td>imam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME OF HOLY BOOK</th>
<th>JUDAISM</th>
<th>CHRISTIANITY</th>
<th>ISLAM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Torah</td>
<td>Bible</td>
<td>Qur’an</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IMPORTANT HOLIDAY</th>
<th>JUDAISM</th>
<th>CHRISTIANITY</th>
<th>ISLAM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Passover</td>
<td>Easter, Christmas</td>
<td>Ramadan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INTERESTING FACT</th>
<th>JUDAISM</th>
<th>CHRISTIANITY</th>
<th>ISLAM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Answers may vary.</td>
<td>Answers may vary.</td>
<td>Answers may vary.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Domain-Related Trade Book**

Refer to the list of recommended trade books in the domain introduction at the front of this Anthology and choose a book about Christianity to read aloud to the class. As you read, use the same strategies that you have been using when reading the read-aloud selections in this Anthology—pause and ask occasional questions; rapidly clarify critical vocabulary within the context of the read-aloud; etc. After you finish reading the trade book aloud, lead students in a discussion as to how the story or information in this book relates to the read-aloud in this lesson.
Lesson Objectives

Core Content Objectives

Students will:

✓ Identify Islam as a monotheistic religion
✓ Explain that Islam originated in Arabia
✓ Explain that followers of Islam are called Muslims
✓ Identify the crescent and star as symbols of Islam
✓ Identify the Qur’an as the holy book of Islam, containing laws for daily living and many stories that appear in Jewish and Christian holy books
✓ Identify that a Muslim place of worship is called a mosque
✓ Identify that Muslims believe that Moses and Jesus were prophets but believe that Muhammad was the last and greatest of the prophets
✓ Identify important Muslim holidays, such as Ramadan and Eid-ul-fitr

Language Arts Objectives

The following language arts objectives are addressed in this lesson. Objectives aligning with the Common Core State Standards are noted with the corresponding standard in parentheses. Refer to the Alignment Chart for additional standards addressed in all lessons in this domain.

Students will:

✓ Describe the connection between prayer and Islam (RI.1.3)
✓ With assistance, categorize and organize facts and information from “Islam” to answer questions (W.1.8)
✓ Ask and answer *where* questions orally, requiring literal recall and understanding of the details or facts of “Islam” (SL.1.2)

✓ Prior to listening to “Islam,” make predictions about whether the religion of Islam had a key figure, and then compare the actual outcomes to predictions

**Core Vocabulary**

- **fast, v.** To refrain from eating for a certain period of time, often for religious reasons  
  *Example:* Followers of many different religions fast during some of the religion’s holy days.  
  *Variation(s):* fasts, fasted, fasting

- **mosque, n.** A house of worship for Muslims  
  *Example:* Men and women often pray separately in the Muslim mosque.  
  *Variation(s):* mosques

- **Muslim, n.** One who practices the religion of Islam  
  *Example:* The Muslim people bow in the direction of Mecca, the birthplace of Muhammad.  
  *Variation(s):* Muslims

- **prayer, n.** Spoken or silent conversations with God  
  *Example:* People of most world religions participate in prayer.  
  *Variation(s):* prayers

- **similarities, n.** Things in common with one another  
  *Example:* It is easy to spot the similarities between bicycles and tricycles.  
  *Variation(s):* similarity

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>At a Glance</th>
<th>Exercise</th>
<th>Materials</th>
<th>Minutes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Introducing the Read-Aloud</strong></td>
<td>Essential Background Information or Terms</td>
<td>Three-Column Chart: Three World Religions</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Making Predictions About the Read-Aloud</td>
<td>Purpose for Listening</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Presenting the Read-Aloud</strong></td>
<td>Islam</td>
<td></td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Discussing the Read-Aloud</strong></td>
<td>Comprehension Questions</td>
<td>Word Work: Similarities</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Extensions**

- Three-Column Chart: Three World Religions  
  Instructional Master 13B-1; chart  
  Domain-Related Trade Book  
  trade book  
  Complete Remainder of the Lesson Later in the Day
Introducing the Read-Aloud

Essential Background Information or Terms

It is recommended that you start out with a review of Judaism and Christianity and what you have filled in thus far on the chart about the three major religions.

Tell students that the religion they will hear about today is called Islam. Tell them that Islam, like Judaism and Christianity, began in the Middle East and that the people who practice Islam also believe in one God. Ask if they recall the word used to describe belief in one God. (*monotheistic; monotheism*) Tell students that the Islamic word for God is *Allah*, which is in Arabic, a language spoken in various countries.

Explain that like the other two religions already introduced, Islam is also practiced around the world by millions of people today.

Making Predictions About the Read-Aloud

Remind students that both Judaism and Christianity have key figures and ask them to name each. (Judaism: Moses; Christianity: Jesus) Ask them to predict whether or not they think Islam has a key figure.

Purpose for Listening

Tell students to listen to hear if their predictions are correct.
Islam

Show image 16A-1: Maira

Hi. My name is Maira [mah-EE-rah]. That means moon in Arabic, my native language. I like that my name matches the symbol of my religion, a crescent moon and a star.

Show image 16A-2: Crescent and Star

I am Muslim and my religion is Islam. It has a lot in common with Judaism and Christianity. My friends, Miriam and Peter, shared their important holidays with you, and I want to do the same.

Show image 16A-3: Cups, dates, and traditional sweet, cheese-filled pastries

Today we are celebrating Eid-ul-Fitr [EED-el FOOT-er], the end of Ramadan [rah-mah-DAHN], a month-long period during which we fast. That means that we do not eat or drink anything from sunup to sundown every day for a month. Ramadan is the holiest month of the year for Muslims. But you need to know the story of my faith in order to understand why.

Show image 16A-4: Map of Saudi Arabia

About six hundred years after Jesus was born, the prophet Muhammad was born in the land that we now call Saudi Arabia. In those days, while Christians and Jewish people already believed in one, all-powerful God, the people living in Saudi Arabia still believed in many gods and goddesses. Muhammad believed that he heard the voice of God, sending him messages of how to lead a better life, a life of helping others. According to our religious
teachings, Muhammad became a prophet and began to spread God’s message throughout the land. Muhammad taught that the rich should share their wealth with the poor. During Muhammad’s lifetime, the stories that he received from Allah, the Arabic word for God, were never written down because Muhammad could neither read nor write. But later they were written and collected into the Muslim holy book, the Qur’an [koor-ahn].

The Qur’an has some stories that are the same as the stories told in both the Hebrew Torah and Christian Bible. The Qur’an also contains laws about how to live a good life. The month of Ramadan celebrates the time that the Qur’an was revealed to Muhammad. One reason Muslims fast at this time of year is because Muhammad fasted in the desert before he received God’s messages. Another reason is to help us remember the poor and the hungry. It is a month of close family activities and much praying. Speaking of prayer, let me show you my mosque.

A mosque is the Muslim place of worship, the spiritual center of the Islamic community. Sometimes mosques are very fancy like the Dome of the Rock in Jerusalem. Ours is not quite so fancy as that, but it is a place I love to go, especially at night during Ramadan. Usually, a mosque has one or two towers known as minarets, and it is from there that the holy man calls us to prayer.

Inside the mosque, you will not find rows of seats like there are in churches and synagogues. Instead, we remove our shoes outside the mosque and gather on prayer rugs. Often women and men pray in different areas, but all of them listen to the Imam...
Tonight, Muslims will gather together under the crescent moon “to surrender,” or give control of our lives over, to God. That is, after all, what the word *Islam* means—“surrender to God.” Then we will break the fast together, first with a date and some water as we always do, and then with a marvelous feast. Yum!

**Show image 16A-8: Family praying**

All Muslims must follow the Five Pillars of Islam, the five most important duties we should do to be good Muslims. Praying five times each day in the direction of Mecca, Muhammad’s birthplace, is one of the five pillars, or duties, we must perform. Another pillar is fasting during Ramadan. Other pillars include: helping the poor and needy and making a pilgrimage, or visit, to Mecca at least once in our lifetimes.

**Show image 16A-9: Ka’ba in Mecca**

The most important pillar, the *shahada*, is declaring our faith in one God. We say, “There is no God but God, and Muhammad is his prophet.” Muslims believe that Abraham, Moses, and Jesus were all great prophets, but Muslims believe that the greatest of the prophets is Muhammad. Likewise, while we believe in some of the teachings of both the Hebrew and the Christian Bibles, all of our beliefs are in the poetic book known as the Qur’an.

**Show image 16A-10: Maira**

Miriam, Peter, and I belong to three different religions, but I hope that you have learned how many similarities we share. I have the same wish for the world as Peter and Miriam. Assalamu Alaikum [ah-sah-*LAHM*-oo ah-*LAYK*-koom]. Peace be unto you.
Discussing the Read-Aloud

Comprehension Questions

1. **Evaluative** Were your predictions about whether Islam has a key figure correct? (Answers may vary.)
2. **Literal** Is there a prophet for Islam? (yes) What is his/her name? (Muhammad)
3. **Inferential** Where did the religion of Islam begin? (Saudi Arabia) Why did it begin in Saudi Arabia? (Muhammad was born in Saudi Arabia.)
4. **Literal** What are the followers of Islam called? (Muslims)
5. **Inferential** What practice do Muslims observe during Ramadan, the holiest month of the year for Muslims? (fasting from sunup to sunset) Why do Muslims fast during this time? (to remember what Muhammad did before he received God’s message)
6. What is the name of another Muslim holiday, which occurs at the end of Ramadan? (Eid-ul-Fitr)
7. **Inferential** Prayer is important to all three religions you have learned about. What is different about prayer time for Muslims? (Prayer is more specified. They must pray five times per day and face the direction of Mecca, Muhammad’s birthplace.)
8. **Evaluative** Many Muslim children grow up memorizing parts of the Qur’an, the holy book of Islam. Why do you think they do that? (Answers may vary.)
9. **Inferential** How would you describe the setting inside a mosque? (People go barefoot in a mosque and pray on prayer rugs.)
10. **Literal** What is the symbol of the religion of Islam? (the crescent and the star)

[Please continue to model the Question? Pair Share process for students, as necessary, and scaffold students in their use of the process.]

11. **Where? Pair Share:** Asking questions after a read-aloud is one way to see how much everyone has learned. Think of...
a question you can ask your neighbor about the read-aloud that starts with the word where. For example, you could ask, “Where did Islam begin?” Turn to your neighbor and ask your where question. Listen to your neighbor’s response. Then your neighbor will ask a new where question, and you will get a chance to respond. I will call on several of you to share your questions with the class.

**Word Work: Similarities**

1. In the read-aloud you heard, “I hope that you have learned how many similarities we share.”

2. Say the word similarities with me.

3. Similarities are things that people or objects have in common with one another, or things that are the same.

4. All birds are different, but they have certain similarities. For example, they all have wings.

5. Look around the room and find two things or people that have similarities. Then tell us what they are. Try to use the word similarities when you tell about it. [Ask two or three students. If necessary, guide and/or rephrase the students’ responses: “Ralph and Raoul have similarities. They are both boys in the first grade, and both of their names begin with the letter ‘R.’”]

6. What’s the word we’ve been talking about?

Use a Synonyms and Antonyms activity for follow-up. I am going to name two objects. If you think the objects have more similarities, say “They have more similarities.” If you think they have more differences, say “They have fewer similarities.” (Answers may vary for all.)

1. coats and sweaters
2. elephants and ants
3. apples and bananas
4. schools and churches
5. moms and dads

**Complete Remainder of the Lesson Later in the Day**
Extensions

Three-Column Chart: Three World Religions
(Instructional Master 13B-1)

Display the incomplete three-column chart like the one shown. Explain to students that you are going to use this chart to talk about today’s read-aloud. Tell them that you are going to write down what they say on the chart, but that they are not expected to be able to read what you write because they are still learning all the rules for decoding. Emphasize that you are writing what they say so that you don’t forget, and tell them that you will read the words to them.

Ask students to help you in filling in the spaces under the Islam column to complete the chart. If students have trouble recalling facts, you may wish to use images from the Flip Book to remind them of relevant details. If students are able, you may want to have them continue filling in their own charts using Instructional Master 13B-1.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NUMBER OF GODS</th>
<th>JUDAISM</th>
<th>CHRISTIANITY</th>
<th>ISLAM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>one</td>
<td>one</td>
<td>one</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAME OF MAIN SHRINE IN JERUSALEM</td>
<td>The Western Wall or The Wailing Wall</td>
<td>Church of the Holy Sepulchre</td>
<td>Dome of the Rock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAME OF KEY FIGURE(S)</td>
<td>Abraham, Moses</td>
<td>Jesus</td>
<td>Muhammad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAME OF FOLLOWERS</td>
<td>Jewish people</td>
<td>Christians</td>
<td>Muslims</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYMBOL OF FAITH</td>
<td>Star of David</td>
<td>Cross</td>
<td>Crescent Moon and Star</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BUILDING OF WORSHIP</td>
<td>synagogue/temple</td>
<td>church/chapel/cathedral</td>
<td>mosque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WORSHIP LEADER</td>
<td>rabbi</td>
<td>priest/pastor/minister</td>
<td>imam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAME OF HOLY BOOK</td>
<td>Torah</td>
<td>Bible</td>
<td>Qur’an</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMPORTANT HOLIDAY</td>
<td>Passover</td>
<td>Easter, Christmas</td>
<td>Ramadan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INTERESTING FACT</td>
<td>Answers may vary.</td>
<td>Answers may vary.</td>
<td>Answers may vary.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Domain-Related Trade Book

Refer to the list of recommended trade books in the domain introduction at the front of this Anthology, and choose a book about Islam to read aloud to the class. As you read, use the same strategies that you have been using when reading the read-aloud selections in this Anthology—pause and ask occasional questions; rapidly clarify critical vocabulary within the context of the read-aloud; etc. After you finish reading the trade book aloud, lead students in a discussion as to how the story or information in this book relates to the read-aloud in this lesson.
**Note to Teacher**

You should spend one day reviewing and reinforcing the material in this domain. You may have students do any combination of the activities provided, in either whole-group or small-group settings.

**Core Content Objectives Addressed in This Domain**

Students will:

- Locate the area known as Mesopotamia on a world map or globe and identify it as part of Asia
- Explain the importance of the Tigris and Euphrates rivers and the use of canals to support farming and the development of the city of Babylon
- Describe the city of Babylon and the Hanging Gardens
- Identify cuneiform as the system of writing used in Mesopotamia
- Explain why a written language is important to the development of a civilization
- Explain the significance of the Code of Hammurabi
- Explain why rules and laws are important to the development of a civilization
- Explain the ways in which a leader is important to the development of a civilization
- Explain the significance of gods/goddesses, ziggurats, temples, and priests in Mesopotamia
- Describe key components of a civilization
- Identify Mesopotamia as the “Cradle of Civilization”
- Describe how a civilization evolves and changes over time
- Locate Egypt on a world map or globe, and identify it as a part of Africa
✓ Explain the importance of the Nile River and how its floods were important for farming
✓ Identify hieroglyphics as the system of writing used in ancient Egypt
✓ Explain the significance of gods/goddesses in ancient Egypt
✓ Identify pyramids and explain their significance in ancient Egypt
✓ Describe how the pyramids were built
✓ Explain that much of Egypt is the Sahara Desert
✓ Identify the Sphinx and explain its significance in ancient Egypt
✓ Identify Hatshepsut as a pharaoh of ancient Egypt and explain her significance as pharaoh
✓ Identify Tutankhamun as a pharaoh of ancient Egypt and explain his significance
✓ Explain that much of what we know about ancient Egypt is because of the work of archaeologists
✓ Identify Judaism, Christianity, and Islam as major monotheistic world religions
✓ Locate Jerusalem, Israel, and the area known as the Middle East on a map
✓ Define monotheism as the belief in one God
✓ Locate places associated with Judaism, Christianity, and Islam
✓ Explain that Islam originated in Arabia
✓ Identify key figures of Judaism, Christianity, and Islam
✓ Identify symbols of Judaism, Christianity, and Islam
✓ Identify buildings associated with Judaism, Christianity, and Islam
✓ Identify important holidays of Judaism, Christianity, and Islam
Review Activities

Where Are We?

**Materials: World map or globe**

Help students locate places associated with the three religions: Jerusalem, Egypt, the Middle East, and Arabia. Have students share connections between these places and the three religions.

Image Review

Show the Flip Book images from any read-aloud again and have students retell the read-aloud using the images. Particular images may also be shown in order to have students identify important people, places, or symbols of the three religions.

Domain-Related Trade Book or Student Choice

**Materials: Trade book**

Read an additional trade book to review a particular religion; refer to the books listed in the domain introduction. You may also choose to have students select a read-aloud to be heard again.

Key Vocabulary Brainstorming

**Materials: Chart paper, chalkboard, or whiteboard**

Give students a key domain concept or vocabulary word such as monotheism. Have them brainstorm everything that comes to mind when they hear the word, such as one God, Judaism, etc. Record their responses on chart paper, a chalkboard, or a whiteboard for reference.

Riddles for Core Content

Ask students riddles such as the following to review core content:

- I am the holy book of Islam. What am I? (Qur’an)
- We are the people who practice Judaism. Who are we? (Jewish people)
- Christians believe that I am the Son of God. Who am I? (Jesus Christ)
• I am a building where Jews go to listen to the rabbi. What am I? (synagogue)

• Muslims believe I was the greatest prophet of all. Who was I? (Muhammad)

• Easter and Christmas are two important holidays in this religion. What religion is this? (Christianity)

Class Book: Three World Religions

Materials: Drawing paper, drawing tools

Tell the class or a group of students that they are going to make a class book to help them remember what they have learned about three world religions. Have students brainstorm important information about Judaism, Christianity, and Islam. Have each student choose one idea to draw a picture of, and then have him or her write a caption for the picture. Bind the pages to make a book to put in the class library for students to read again and again.

Three-Column Chart: Three World Religions

Conceal the information on the Three-Column Chart that was used in the extension activities. Ask students if they can identify particular pieces of information such as, “What is the name of the holy book of Christianity?” See if the class is able to uncover the entire chart.
This domain assessment evaluates each student’s retention of domain and academic vocabulary words and the core content targeted in *Early World Civilizations*. The results should guide review and remediation the following day.

There are four parts to this assessment. You may choose to do the parts in more than one sitting if you feel this is more appropriate for your students. Part I (vocabulary assessment) is divided into two sections: the first assesses domain-related vocabulary and the second assesses academic vocabulary. Parts II, III, and IV of the assessment address the core content targeted in *Early World Civilizations*.

**Part I (Instructional Master DA-1)**

Directions: I am going to say a sentence using a word you have heard in the read-alouds and the domain. First I will say the word and then use it in a sentence. If I use the word correctly in my sentence, circle the smiling face. If I do not use the word correctly in my sentence, circle the frowning face. I will say each sentence two times. Let’s do number one together.

1. **Trade**: Some people trade books with friends when they finish reading them. (smiling face)
2. **Scribes**: Scribes were the people in ancient Egypt who built the pyramids. (frowning face)
3. **Religion**: As part of the Egyptian religion, people worshiped many different gods and goddesses. (smiling face)
4. **Caravan**: The caravan of seven trucks drove slowly along the highway during the snowstorm. (smiling face)
5. **Flooding**: The heavy rains caused the flooding of the river. (smiling face)
6. **Hieroglyphs**: The hieroglyphs were the people who searched for the tomb of King Tutankhamun. (frowning face)
7. **Pyramid**: A pyramid is a structure with triangular sides. (smiling face)

8. **Sphinx**: The Sphinx is an imaginary creature with the body of a lion and head of a person. (smiling face)

9. **Pharaoh**: The pharaoh was always the weakest person in Egypt. (frowning face)

10. **Archaeologist**: The archaeologist helped uncover parts of the ancient city to learn about the way people lived long ago. (smiling face)

Directions: I am going to read more sentences using other words you have heard and practiced. First I will say the word and then use it in a sentence. If I use the word correctly in my sentence, circle the smiling face. If I do not use the word correctly in my sentence, circle the frowning face. I will say each sentence two times.

11. **Symbols**: The letters of our alphabet are symbols for sounds. (smiling face)

12. **Specific**: A strawberry is a specific type of fruit. (smiling face)

13. **Visible**: Sound waves are visible. (frowning face)

14. **Tradition**: If a family celebrates the Fourth of July every year by watching the fireworks, that is a tradition. (smiling face)

15. **Similarities**: There are many similarities between cars and trucks because they are alike in many ways. (smiling face)

**Part II (Instructional Master DA-2)**

Directions: I will read a sentence about an ancient civilization. If it is only true for Mesopotamia, circle the letter ‘M’ in that row. If the sentence is only true for Egypt, circle the letter ‘E’ in that row. If the sentence is true for both Mesopotamia and ancient Egypt, circle the letters ‘M’ and ‘E’ in that row. Let’s do number one together.

1. This civilization developed along the Nile River in Africa. (E)

2. This civilization developed between the Euphrates and Tigris rivers in Asia. (M)
3. This civilization discovered that the flooding of the river left rich soil for growing crops. (E)

4. This civilization realized the importance of developing a system of writing to keep records. (M, E)

5. This civilization developed a system of writing known as cuneiform. (M)

6. This civilization developed a system of writing using hieroglyphics. (E)

7. This civilization was ruled by a pharaoh. (E)

8. This civilization understood that leaders were important. (M, E)

9. This civilization had written laws known as the Code of Hammurabi. (M)

10. This civilization built pyramids as burial places for important people. (E)

11. This civilization had cities. (M, E)

12. This civilization believed in many gods and goddesses. (M, E)

Part III (Instructional Master DA-3)

1. In the left-hand column, #1, Judaism, matches which symbol in the middle column? Draw a line from Judaism to that symbol. Which leader in the right-hand column was a leader in Judaism? A. Jesus, B. Moses or C. Muhammad? Draw a line from the symbol of Judaism to its leader.

2. In the left-hand column, #2, Christianity, matches which symbol in the middle column? Draw a line from Christianity to that symbol. Which leader in the right-hand column was a leader in Christianity? A. Jesus, B. Moses or C. Muhammad? Draw a line from the symbol of Christianity to its leader.

3. In the left-hand column, #1, Islam, matches which symbol in the middle column? Draw a line from Islam to that symbol. Which leader in the right-hand column was a leader in Islam? A. Jesus, B. Moses or C. Muhammad? Draw a line from the symbol of Islam to its leader.
Part IV (Instructional Master DA-4)

Directions: I will read a sentence about one of the three religions we discussed. If it is true for Judaism, circle the letter ‘J’ in that row. If it is true for Christianity, circle the letter ‘C’ in that row. If is true for Islam, circle the letter ‘I’ in that row. Let’s do number one together.

1. This religion is the oldest of the three. (J)
2. People of this religion go to a mosque to worship Allah, which is how you say God in the Arabic language. (I)
3. The holy book of this religion is the Bible. (C)
4. The people who follow this religion are called Muslims. (I)
5. The Star of David is an important symbol of this religion. (J)
6. Easter and Christmas are important holidays in this religion. (C)
7. People of this religion believe that Jesus is the Son of God. (C)
8. Praying five times a day is one of the duties of followers of this religion. (I)
9. The followers of this religion are called Jewish people. (J)
10. People of this religion go to a church to worship God. (C)
11. A rabbi is a leader in this religion. (J)
12. People of this religion believe the greatest of all the prophets was Muhammad. (I)
Note to Teacher

Please use this final day to address class results of the Domain Assessment. Based on the results of the Domain Assessment and students' Tens scores, you may wish to use this class time to provide remediation opportunities that target specific areas of weakness for individual students, small groups, or the whole class.

Alternatively, you may also choose to use this class time to extend or enrich students’ experience with domain knowledge. A number of enrichment activities are provided below in order to provide students with opportunities to enliven their experiences with domain concepts.

Remediation

You may choose to regroup students according to particular areas of weakness, as indicated from Domain Assessment results and students’ Tens scores.

Remediation opportunities include:

- targeting Review activities
- revisiting lesson Extensions
- rereading and discussing select read-alouds
- reading the corresponding lesson in the Supplemental Guide, if available
**Enrichment Activities**

**Guest Speakers**

Invite parents or religious leaders in the community to come in and talk about their traditions associated with the three religions. You will want to share with them, ahead of time, the chart used for the extension activity to maintain the focus on particular aspects of the religions. You may also wish to share the family letter with your speakers so they understand that you are covering the religions in the context of world history and not for the purpose of proselytizing.

**Class Book: Three World Religions**

**Materials: Drawing paper, drawing tools**

Tell the class or a group of students that they are going to make a class book to help them remember what they have learned about three world religions. Have students brainstorm important information about Judaism, Christianity, and Islam. Have each student choose one idea to draw a picture of, and then have him or her write a caption for the picture. Bind the pages to make a book to put in the class library for students to read again and again.

**Three-Column Chart: Three World Religions**

Conceal the information on the Three-Column Chart that was used in the Extension activities. Ask students if they can identify particular pieces of information such as, “What is the name of the holy book of Christianity?” See if the class is able to uncover the entire chart.
For Teacher Reference Only:
Copies of Tell It Again! Workbook
Dear Family Member,

During the next several days, your child will be learning about the ancient civilization of Mesopotamia. S/he will learn about the importance of the Tigris and Euphrates rivers for farming and for the cities that grew where people settled. Your child will also learn about the development of a system of writing called cuneiform, the existence of leaders called kings, and the importance of religion. Your child will come to understand that it is because of these key components that Mesopotamia is considered a civilization. Below are some suggestions for activities that you may do at home to reinforce what your child is learning about Mesopotamia.

1. Where Are We?

   Have your child locate the area known as Mesopotamia (located in the Middle East) on a world map or globe. (If you do not have a map, check one out from the library.) Talk about the geography of this area. (desert, Tigris and Euphrates rivers, etc.)

2. Draw and Write

   Have your child draw and/or write about what has been learned about Mesopotamia and then share the drawing with you. Ask questions to keep your child using the vocabulary learned at school.

3. Compare Civilizations

   Compare/contrast the farming, cities, writing, leaders, and religion of Mesopotamia and the United States. Talk about the importance of each of these components in any civilization.

4. Read Aloud Each Day

   It is very important that you read to your child each day. The local library has many books on Mesopotamia, and a list of books and other resources relevant to this topic is attached to this letter.

5. The Golden Rule

   Your child will learn the Golden Rule: “Do unto others as you would have them do unto you.” Talk with your child about the meaning of this saying and ways to follow it. Find opportunities to compliment your child for following the Golden Rule.

   Be sure to let your child know how much you enjoy hearing about what s/he has been learning at school.
Recommended Trade Books for Early World Civilizations

Trade Book List


*Mesopotamia*


*Ancient Egypt*


**Three World Religions**


**Websites and Other Resources**

**Student Resources**

1. Egypt Game
   http://www.neok12.com/diagram/Ancient-Egypt-01.htm

2. Geography of Egypt
   http://kids.nationalgeographic.com/kids/places/find/egypt

3. World Religion Images (text may be too advanced for most students)
   http://www.uri.org/kids/world.htm

4. Ziggurats

**Family Resources**

5. Brooklyn Museum
   http://www.brooklynmuseum.org/exhibitions

6. Church of the Holy Sepulchre
   http://www.sacred-destinations.com/israel/jerusalem-holy-sepulchre-photos

7. Dome of the Rock

8. Western Wall
   http://www.sacred-destinations.com/israel/jerusalem-western-wall-photos

9. World Religions for Teachers
   http://www.bbc.co.uk/schools/religion
Directions: Draw a picture and/or write about what you have learned about each of these components of the civilizations of Mesopotamia and ancient Egypt.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Mesopotamia</th>
<th>Ancient Egypt</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Religion</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Leaders</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Writing</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cities</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Farming</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Directions:** Draw a picture and/or write about what you have learned about each of these components of the civilizations of Mesopotamia.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mesopotamia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Religion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leaders</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Writing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cities</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Farming</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Dear Family Member,

I hope you have enjoyed talking with your child about the ancient civilization of Mesopotamia. For the next several days, your child will be learning about another ancient civilization, ancient Egypt. S/he will learn about the importance of the Nile River for farming and the cities that grew where people settled. Your child will also learn about the development of a system of writing using hieroglyphs, the existence of leaders called pharaohs, and the importance of religion as key elements or components of a civilization. Your child will be able to compare this ancient civilization to Mesopotamia. Below are some suggestions for activities that you may do at home to reinforce what your child is learning about ancient Egypt.

1. **Where Are We?**

   Have your child locate the continent of Africa and the country of Egypt on a world map or globe. (If you do not have a map, check one out from the library.) Talk about the geography of this area. (Sahara Desert, Nile River . . .)

2. **Draw and Write**

   Have your child draw and/or write about what has been learned about ancient Egypt and then share the drawing with you. Ask questions to keep your child using the vocabulary learned at school.

3. **Compare Civilizations**

   Compare/contrast the farming, cities, writing, leaders, and religion of ancient Mesopotamia and ancient Egypt. Talk about the importance of each of these components in both civilizations.

4. **Read Aloud Each Day**

   It is very important that you read to your child each day. Please refer to the list of books and other resources sent home with the previous family letter, recommending resources related to ancient Egypt.

   Be sure to let your child know how much you enjoy hearing about what s/he has been learning at school.
Egyptian Hieroglyphs

Directions: Use these hieroglyphs to write your name and then some other words or a short message.

Aa  Bb  Cc, Ss, Zz  Dd  Ee

Ff, Vv  Gg  Hh  Ii  Jj

Kk  Ll  Mm  Nn  Oo

Pp  Qq  Rr  Tt  Uu, Ww
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Somebody</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wanted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>But</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>So</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Then</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Dear Family Member,

During the past several weeks, your child has been listening to read-alouds about the ancient civilizations and people of Mesopotamia and Egypt. They have learned that the ancient Mesopotamians and Egyptians worshiped many different gods. We have talked about how these beliefs influenced the daily lives of the ancient Mesopotamians and Egyptians and helped to shape their civilizations.

On ________________________, we will begin the remaining lessons in this unit of study. The read-alouds will extend what students have already learned about the ancient Mesopotamians’ and Egyptians’ belief in many gods. Lessons 13–16 will explain the historical changes that began to take place and how these ancient people developed new beliefs and practices focused on one God rather than many gods. These final read-alouds provide a historical introduction to the development of three world religions—Judaism, Christianity, and Islam—which are all characterized by a belief in a single God.

The Core Knowledge Language Arts program introduces students at various grade levels to the major world religions as part of their study of world history. The intent is to provide the vocabulary and context for understanding the many ways that the world religions have influenced ideas and events in history. It is important to understand that the religions your child will hear about in first grade—Judaism, Christianity, and Islam—are not being singled out or presented in any way that suggests the merits or correctness of specific religious beliefs.

The read-alouds in first grade focus on teaching students very basic similarities and differences among religions, and fostering an understanding and respect for those similarities and differences. The historical events and ideas leading to the development of each religion are presented in a balanced and respectful manner. If students have questions about the truth or “rightness” of any beliefs or religions, we will encourage them to discuss their questions with you at home, by saying, “People of different faiths believe different things to be true. These are questions you may want to talk about with your family and the adults at home.”

The Core Knowledge Language Arts program’s inclusion of world religions within the teaching of world history is comprehensive and balanced over the course of the elementary grades, presenting historical knowledge from around the world from ancient times to the present. The read-alouds about Judaism, Christianity, and Islam that your child will hear in first grade will be elaborated on in later grades. In addition, students in
later grades will be introduced to other religions—such as Hinduism and Buddhism—as they learn about historical events in other parts of the world.

Please let us know if you have any questions or if you would like to see any of the read-alouds we are using.
Directions: Draw a picture and/or write about what you have learned about each of these components of the civilizations of ancient Egypt.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Religion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leaders</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Writing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cities</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Farming</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Three World Religions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Judaism</th>
<th>Christianity</th>
<th>Islam</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number of Gods</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of main shrine in Jerusalem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of key figure(s)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of followers</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symbol of faith</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Building of worship</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Worship leader</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of holy book</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Important holiday</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interesting fact</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Directions: Listen to your teacher's instructions.

1. ☑️ ☭
2. ☑️ ☭
3. ☑️ ☭
4. ☑️ ☭
5. ☑️ ☭
6. ☑️ ☭
7. ☑️ ☭
8. ☑️ ☭
9. ☑️ ☭
10. ☑️ ☭
<p>| | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>😊</td>
<td>😞</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>😊</td>
<td>😞</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>😊</td>
<td>😞</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>😊</td>
<td>😞</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>😊</td>
<td>😞</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Directions: Listen to your teacher's instructions.

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>😊</td>
<td>😞</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>😊</td>
<td>😞</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>😊</td>
<td>😞</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>😊</td>
<td>😞</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>😊</td>
<td>😞</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>😊</td>
<td>😞</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>😊</td>
<td>😞</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>😊</td>
<td>😞</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>😊</td>
<td>😞</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>😊</td>
<td>😞</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Smiley Face</td>
<td>Sad Face</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Directions: Listen to the sentence read by the teacher. If the sentence is true for the civilization of Mesopotamia, circle the 'M' in the row. If the sentence is true for the civilization of ancient Egypt, circle the 'E' in the row. If the sentence is true for both civilizations, circle both the 'M' and the 'E' in the row.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M</th>
<th>E</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Directions: Listen to the sentence read by the teacher. If the sentence is true for the civilization of Mesopotamia, circle the ‘M’ in the row. If the sentence is true for the civilization of ancient Egypt, circle the ‘E’ in the row. If the sentence is true for both civilizations, circle both the ‘M’ and the ‘E’ in the row.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Directions: Listen to the teacher read aloud the words in the left-hand and right-hand columns. Draw a line to match each religion with its symbol and leader.

1. Judaism
   A. Jesus

2. Christianity
   B. Moses

3. Islam
   C. Muhammad
Directions: Listen to the teacher read aloud the words in the left-hand and right-hand columns. Draw a line to match each religion with its symbol and leader.
Directions: Listen to the sentence read by the teacher. If the sentence is true for Judaism, circle the ‘J’ in the row. If the sentence is true for Christianity, circle the ‘C’ in the row. If the sentence is true for Islam, circle the ‘I’ in the row.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>J</th>
<th>C</th>
<th>I</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>J</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>J</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>J</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>J</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>J</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>J</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>J</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Directions: Listen to the sentence read by the teacher. If the sentence is true for Judaism, circle the ‘J’ in the row. If the sentence is true for Christianity, circle the ‘C’ in the row. If the sentence is true for Islam, circle the ‘I’ in the row.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>J</th>
<th>C</th>
<th>I</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>J</td>
<td></td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>J</td>
<td></td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td>C</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>J</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
<td>C</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Tens Recording Chart

Use this grid to record Tens scores. Refer to the Tens Conversion Chart that follows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Tens Conversion Chart

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number Correct</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>17</th>
<th>18</th>
<th>19</th>
<th>20</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Simply find the number of correct answers the student produced along the top of the chart and the number of total questions on the worksheet or activity along the left side. Then find the cell where the column and the row converge. This indicates the Tens score. By using the Tens Conversion Chart, you can easily convert any raw score, from 0 to 20, into a Tens score.

Please note that the Tens Conversion Chart was created to be used with assessments that have a defined number of items (such as written assessments). However, teachers are encouraged to use the Tens system to record informal observations as well. Observational Tens scores are based on your observations during class. It is suggested that you use the following basic rubric for recording observational Tens scores.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tens Score</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9–10</td>
<td>Student appears to have excellent understanding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7–8</td>
<td>Student appears to have good understanding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5–6</td>
<td>Student appears to have basic understanding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3–4</td>
<td>Student appears to be having difficulty understanding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1–2</td>
<td>Student appears to be having great difficulty understanding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Student appears to have no understanding/does not participate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

These materials are the result of the work, advice, and encouragement of numerous individuals over many years. Some of those singled out here already know the depth of our gratitude; others may be surprised to find themselves thanked publicly for help they gave quietly and generously for the sake of the enterprise alone. To helpers named and unnamed we are deeply grateful.

CONTRIBUTORS TO EARLIER VERSIONS OF THESE MATERIALS


We would like to extend special recognition to Program Directors Matthew Davis and Souzanne Wright who were instrumental to the early development of this program.

SCHOOLS

We are truly grateful to the teachers, students, and administrators of the following schools for their willingness to field test these materials and for their invaluable advice: Capitol View Elementary, Challenge Foundation Academy (IN), Community Academy Public Charter School, Lake Lure Classical Academy, Lepanto Elementary School, New Holland Core Knowledge Academy, Paramount School of Excellence, Pioneer Challenge Foundation Academy, New York City PS 26R (The Carteret School), PS 30X (Wilton School), PS 50X (Clara Barton School), PS 96Q, PS 102X (Joseph O. Loretan), PS 104Q (The Bays Water), PS 214K (Michael Friedsam), PS 223Q (Lyndon B. Johnson School), PS 308K (Clara Cardwell), PS 333Q (Goldie Maple Academy), Sequoyah Elementary School, South Shore Charter Public School, Spartanburg Charter School, Steed Elementary School, Thomas Jefferson Classical Academy, Three Oaks Elementary, West Manor Elementary.

And a special thanks to the CKLA Pilot Coordinators Anita Henderson, Yasmin Lugo-Hernandez, and Susan Smith, whose suggestions and day-to-day support to teachers using these materials in their classrooms was critical.
CREDITS

Every effort has been taken to trace and acknowledge copyrights. The editors tender their apologies for any accidental infringement where copyright has proved untraceable. They would be pleased to insert the appropriate acknowledgment in any subsequent edition of this publication. Trademarks and trade names are shown in this publication for illustrative purposes only and are the property of their respective owners. The references to trademarks and trade names given herein do not affect their validity.

The Word Work exercises are based on the work of Beck, McKeown, and Kucan in Bringing Words to Life (The Guilford Press, 2002).

All photographs are used under license from Shutterstock, Inc. unless otherwise noted.

EXPERT REVIEWERS
James P. Allen, Benjamin Studevent-Hickman, Heather Warren, Patricia Wattenmaker

WRITERS
James Weiss, Catherine S. Whittington

ILLUSTRATORS AND IMAGE SOURCES

Regarding the Shutterstock items listed above, please note: No person or entity shall falsely represent, expressly or by way of reasonable implication, that the content herein was created by that person or entity, or any person other than the copyright holder(s) of that content.